## UC Berkeley

## Dissertations, Department of Linguistics

## Title

Fundamentals of Iu Mien (Yao) Grammar

## Permalink

https://escholarship.org/uc/item/4bt0n84i

## Author

Court, Christopher
Publication Date
1985

By
Christopher Anthony Forbes Court
A.B. (Hins.) (University of Sydney, Australia) 1961
M.A. (Hons.) (University of Sydney, Australia) 1967
M.A. (university of California) 1981
C. Phil. (University of California) 1981 DISSERTATION

Submitted in partial satisfaction of the requirements for the degree of DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY
in

## Linguistics

in the
GRADUATE DIVISION
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY

Approved:


## DOOM KEPI COMPARED DELCibici 17, 1985

© 1986

## CHRISTOPHER ANTHONY FORBES COURT

## All Rights Reseryed


#### Abstract

AESIRACI

Fundauentals_of_IU_Mien_(Yacl_Gramiar is a basic grammatical study of the language of the Mien (Iu Mieng Yu Mien or Yaol people, as spoken with mincr lceal variations in northern Thailand, northern Laos, north Vieinam and parts of China. The approach is descriptive, but there are frequent references to features general to the linguistic area, and zeritain features of tneoretical relevance are discussed. Data was gathered from 1979 dcun to the present $:$ jmefrcm members of the Mien community who had fles Lacs and resettled eventually as refugees ir Richacnd, California, and published material was also drawn upon. Chapter 1 provides a brief general introduction to the larguage in its genetic and contact affiliations with other languages and cuitures; it also provides a phonological sketch. Chapter il describes the basic units of the language: utterance, sentence, clause, part of speech, and discusses various kinds of sentences and clauses in combination and singly, touching on aspects of verb serializatione Chapter 111 discusses the noun phrase with special attention to compounds, numerals and classifiesss Chapter iv ceass in detail with certain aspects of verbs, verb phrases anc clauses, including certain veríai coilocations and returning to other aspects of vert seriaiization. Chapter $y$ presents scme trief concluaing renarks.


# To Ey beloved wife Sandie and 

```
my cherished sister-in-law Judy
```


## ACEXOLLEGGEEENIS

My debt of gratitude is cwed to a large number of individuals and organizations, and $I$ hope that $I$ will be fcrgiven if -- Heaven forbid! -- 1 should fail tc mention any of them.

I am grateful to the Graduate Livisicn of the University of California, Eerkeley, for helping to defray the expenses of my research into the Mien linguage.

To Tom Elair, a former Thal student cf mine, and a fellow lover of Thailand, who has almays gene out of his way to be forthcoming with bibliographical informationg nelpful tips, and any other friendly thing he cculd do.

To Jonathan Habarad, another former Thai student, a fellow student and lover of the Mien people, an expert on the Mien in their resettlement conditicns in the United States, who has learned their langlage and culture even while helping them to cope with problems arisirg from lbis country's language and cuiture, for celtural and biblicgraphical information about the Mien, especially towards the end cf summer 1985, when he was frantically busy himself.

To A. Aarcns, wizard of UAIX programaing, who was always ready to make that devious contrivance do the things we wanted it to, even when it didn't want to.

To Dorothy Duff Browng a bottomiess source of wisdom and helpfulness in matters of dissertaticn writing.

To Dr. Kun Chang: pioneer anc savant of Miac-Yac studies, for prompt and sympathetic help.

Tc my officemate, Usha dain, who graciously yielded her part of the office for the final menths of dissertation-writing in summer i985.

To Alan Shaterianp an old frlend cf my wife's, with whom I share an interest in ear-phonetics and the stranger sounds that people make. for helpful advice in practical matters at various stages of the research, anc the gift of a copy of nis own dissertation in order tc encourage me.

To Julian Wheatley and David Solnit, whe, while they were at the University of California, Eerkeley, as feilow nembers of the small circle cf pecple interested in Southeast Asian linguistics, jcined re in stimulating and helpful discussions.

Tc Vvonne Kins, Administrative Assistant, and Helen Tu, Graduate Secretary of the Departrent of South and Southeast

Asian Studies, the University of California, Berkeley, who have always helped me as becane a teacher, while still a graduate student.

To Bob Goldman, Amin Sweeney, Sally Sutherland and all the other faculty of the Department of South and Southeast Asian Studies, the University of California, Berkeley, who make the Department such a delightful eit stimulating place to mork.

To the twin pillars of the Linguistic Department at the University of California, Berkeley, Mrs. Eileen Daegaard and Mrs. Larue Seegmilier, for never-failing help and advice through my years as a graduate student.

To Chaosarn Srisongfa, an importan: ?eader of the Mien refugee community, who invited me as a linguist from the University of California, Berkeley, tc make a practical investigation of his language, thus leading re back to Mien studies.

To my Mien friends and informants, Fcu-One Saephan and Moung-Yoon Chow, who were so patient, insightful and sympathetic in helping me to study their linguage.

To my Dissertation Comistee members, Karl Zimmer of the Department of Linguistics, an expert cn compounding, anc Hers Phillips, of the Department of Arthropclogy, another
lover of Thailand, and champicn of Thai studies at the University of California, Eerkeley, for their sympathy and encour açemen:.

To Jim Matisoff, Chair of my Dissertation Committee and connoisseur extraordinaire of Southeast Asian languages, who first made it possible for ae to cone tc the University of California, 3erkeley, for graduate studies and has been throughout an essential source of encouragement and help of all kinds.

To my beloved and heroic sister-in-1aw, Judy Betts, for many, many days and nights of frofessicnal assistance, as word processor and editor, whe saw that the dissertation made its deadiine, and is responsible for its elegant and professional format.

Lastly, to Sandra Shamis, my wife and companion of my graduate school years, herself a veteran of graduate studies and the acadeaic milians who copec with the probleas of both running a household and her cwn career: hhile extending her loving help in ways too numercus to menticn.

## TARLE_DF_CONTENTS

CHAPTER I INTRODUCTION
1.1 Iu-Mien as Miao-Yu language ..... 1
1.2 The setting of the Mien lan- ..... 7 geage: Yao for mien) culture and history
1.2.1 Circumstances of the study ..... 8
1=2.2 The informants ..... 9
i. 3 Phonology ..... 10
(a) Vowel-harmony ..... 11
(b) Initial consonant voicing- ..... 11 harmony
1.3.1 The segmental material ..... 12
1.3.1.1 Historical origin of the segmental material ..... 17
1.3.2 The tones of Mien ..... 17
1.3.2.1 Tone correspondence with ..... 18 Chinese
1.3.2.2 Tone-sandhi ..... 19
1.3.3 Intonation ..... 19
1.3.4 Junctures or pauses ..... 20
1.3.E Orthograpty ..... 20
CHAPTER II THE TYPFS OF SIMPLE SENTENCE: ..... 23 THE SENTENCE TMPIC: THE CIAUSE: SENTENCES SIMPLE AND COMPQSITE: PARTS DF SPEECH
2.1 Introduction ..... 23
2.2 The utterance ..... 23
2.3 The sentence ..... 24
2.3.1 What is bounded by the process ..... 24 may be a simple or composite utterance
2.3-2 Prosodic elements may distin- ..... 24 quish different constituent groupings within the sentence
2.3.3 Utterances and sentences as ..... 25 speech acts
(a) Statements of states of affairs ..... 25
(b) Fromptings to the interlocutor ..... 25
(c) Questions ..... 26
(d) Addressative expressions ..... 26
(e) Responses so utterance types ..... 26
(f) Exclamations ..... 26
2.3.3.1 Final remarks on sentences as ..... 27 speech acts
2.3.4 Structure of the sentence ..... 27
2.3.4.1 The topic as a sentence con- ..... 29 stituent: the matural Topic Hierarchy"
2.3.4.1.1 Nominal expression as topic ..... 31
2.3.4.1.2 The verb phrase as topic ..... 31
2.3.4.1.3 Time expression as topic ..... 32
2.3.4.1.4 Flace expression as topic ..... 32
2.3.4.1.5 Topics that can be interpreted ..... 33 as agents introduced by a pre- position
2.3.4.1.0́ clauses as topics ..... 33

Table of Contents

| 2.3.4.1.6.1 | Survey of account of topic so far | 34 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2.3.4.1.7 | Sentences with resultative complements: are they of todiccoment structure? | 36 |
| 2.3.4.2 | The semantics of the topiccomment construstion | 39 |
| 2.3.4.2.1 | Sentences where verbs have to be mentally supplied | 40 |
| 2.3.4.2.2 | The topic comment copula: <se〉 or <sue> | 41 |
| 2.3.4.2.3 | Sentences where conjunctions have to be mentally supplied: paratax is | 45 |
| 2.3.4.2.4 | Concluding remarks on topiccomment semantics | 49 |
| 2.3.4.3 | Sentences simple and composite | 49 |
| 2.3.4.3.1 | Which strinos of verbs or verbphrases constitute clauses? | 50 |
| 2.3.4.3.2 | Composite sentences or separate sentences? | 50 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.1 | Proscdic elements | 51 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.2 | Topicalizers and conjunctionssingle repeated and correlative | 52 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.2.1 | Tcpicalizers and single conjunctions | 52 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.2.2 | Repeated conjunctions or adverbiail phrases | 55 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.2.3 | Correlative conjunctions and adverbs | 56 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.2.4 | Parallelism of the clauses | 53 |
| 2.3 .4 .4 | Is the composite sentence compound or comolex? If complex, what are the exact relations among the parts? | 60 |

Table of Contents

| 2．3．4．4．1 | Paratactic sentences：deep structure | 60 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2．3．4．4．1．1 | Irreversibility of the order of the clauses | 62 |
| 2．3．4．4．2 | Sentences with repeated con－ junctions or adverbial phrases | 63 |
| 2．3．4．4．3 | Alternative questions | 63 |
| 2．3．4．4．4 | Sentences with clausal subjects／ topics | 63 |
| 2．3．4．4．5 | Sentences with amplificatory clauses | 64 |
| 2．3．4．4．5．1 | Sentences with clausal comple－ ments after verbs of emotion | 85 |
| 2．3．4．4．5．2 | Sentences containing the word ＜pingx＞＇to hide；to act surrep－ titiously＂combined into the structure＂〈pingx＞＋Vp＂：mean－ ing＇to vp surreptitiously＂ | 66 |
| 2．3．4．4．5．3 | Sentences containing the struc－ ture NVP＋〈aaO－dzyaauc＞＂to play＇，with the meaning＇to VP without serious intent＇ | 67 |
| 2.3 .4 .4 .6 | Sentences with purpose clauses | 67 |
| 2．3．4．4．6．1 | Purpose clauses after the verbs of motion 〈taaih＞＂to come＂and ＜mingh＞to go＂ | 69 |
| 2．3．4．4．6．2 | Sentences wth clauses of reason | 70 |
| 2．3．4．4．7 | Sentences with quoted clauses as clausal objects | 70 |
| 2．3．4．4．8 | Post－pivotal slauses as objects： the pivotal construction | 71 |
| 2．3．4．4．9 | Sentences containing a relative clause（RC） | 72 |
| 2．3．4．4．9．1 | Structural varieties of relative clause | 72 |

2.3.4.4.9.2 Dne kind of reduced relative ..... 74 c? ause: fseudo-pivotal construc- tion
2.3.4.4.9.3 Another kind of reduced relative ..... 75 ciause: the RC incorporated into the nomirai compound
2.3.4.4.9.4 Various syntactic roles of the ..... 75 Neis that can head RC's: the "Accessibility hierarchy"
2.3.5 Structure of questions ..... 82
2.3.5.1 "Yes/no" questions ..... 82
2.3.5.2 Alternative questions ..... 85
2.3.5.3 Whw-questions: the correlation ..... 86 between "wh"-question words, in- definite pronouns and indefinite relative pronouns
2.4 The word: parts of speech ..... 90
(1) Numerais (Num) ..... 90
(2) Classifiers (CIf) ..... 90
(3) Nouns (N) ..... 90
(4) Yerbs (V) ..... 91
(5) Adverbs (Adv) ..... 91
(6) Conjunctions (Conj) ..... 91
(7) Particles (Prt) ..... 91
(8) Inter jections (intis) ..... 91
2.4.1 Morphology of the parts of speech ..... 92
2.4.1.1 Apparent fossil remains of deri- ..... 92 vational morphoiogy: allofams
2.4.1.1.1 Mien coublets from one and the ..... 93 same Chinese word
2.4.1:1.2 Non-doubletic allofams ..... 96
2.4.2 Overlapping parts of speech ..... 99
(a) Verb/noun ..... 99
(b) Verb/numeral ..... 101
2.4.2.1 Overlapping parts of seeech ..... 101 among Chinese loanwords
2.4.3 Henonomy ..... 102
CHAPTER III THE NOUN PHRASE ..... 104
3.1 The general structure of the ..... 104 Noun Phrase (NP)
3.2 Autonomous ncuns (N) ..... 105
3.2.1 Ccmmon nouns ..... 107
3.2.2 Proper nouns ..... 107
3.2.3 Interrogative/Indefinite ..... 109 froncuns
3.2.4 The demonstratives <naiv> 'this', ..... 110 <naic> 'that (near addresseef" 〈uav> 'yon"
3.2.5 Spatial co-deictics ..... 112
3.2 .6 The personal pronouns ..... 113
3.3 Compound nouns ..... 3.3
3.3.1 Compound orders and hypheniza- ..... 115 tion
3.3.2 Noun-noun compounds (N-N cpds) ..... 117
3.3.2.1 Co-ordinate $N-N$ cods ..... 117
3.3.2.1.1 Appositional $N-N$ CDS ..... 117
3.3.2.i.2 Acditive idvanóva; cpds ..... 119
3.3.2.2 Hetero-ordinate $N+N$ edds ..... 121
$3.3 .2 .2 .1 \quad \mathrm{~N}_{\mathrm{N}}^{\mathrm{N}} \mathrm{N}$ compounds ..... 121

Table of Contents

| 3.3 .2 .2 .2 3.3 .3 | N -compounds sp Verb-containing nominal compounds | 124 126 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3.3.3.1 | ```Nominal compounds containing V adj``` | 126 |
| 3.3.3.1.1 | $\mathrm{V}_{\text {adj }}+\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{h}} \text { cpds }$ | 127 |
| 3.3.3.1.2 | The "aft-" adjective | 129 |
| 3.3.3.2 | Nominal compounds contaifing action-verbs | 129 |
| 3.3.3.2.1 | $V+N{ }_{h}$ compounds | 130 |
| $3=3.3 .2 .2$ | $N+\ddot{V} \text { compounds }$ | 131 |
| 3.3.4 | Cempounds of more than two morphemes | 132 |
| 3.3.4.1 | Nominal comprunds containing a reduced relative clause | 132 |
| 3.3 .5 | Other aspects of nominal compounds | 134 |
| 3.3.5.1 | Corpounds with bound constituents | 134 |
| 3.3.5.2 | Types of bound constituent | 134 |
| (a) | Prefixes | 134 |
| (bi | Suffixes | 136 |
| \{c) | Porphans | 136 |
| (d) | Loan morphemes | 137 |
| 3.3.5.3 | Reduplication in nominal compounds | 137 |
| 3.3 .6 | Finai remarks on srder of modifier and modified | 138 |
| 3.4 | Special types of NP (I) cuantified NP | 141 |

3.4.1 The numerals \{Num\} ..... 141
3.4.1.1 Classification of numeral ..... 143morphemes by co-occurrence
3.4.1.2 Provenience of the Num morphemes ..... 145
3.4.1.3 Ordinary and special numeration ..... 145
3.4.i.3.i û diñary mumeration ..... 146
3.4.1.3.1.1 Cardinal numerals ..... 146
3.4.1.3.1.1.1 Morphophonemics of the numerals ..... 146
(A) Segmental morphophonemics ..... 146
(a) Obifgatory ..... 146
(b) Optional ..... 147
(B) Tonal morphophonemics ..... 147
3.4.1.3.1.1.2 The grammatical structure of ..... 143 numbers
3.4.1.3.1.1.3 Co-occurrence among Num ..... 151
morphemes of Sets I, II
3.4.1.3.1.1.4 Short form of numerals ..... 151
(a) Some generativistic remarks on ..... 152 shortened numerais
3.4.1.3.1.1.5 Other features of Num's ..... 153
(A) Num's with gaps ..... 153
(B) Num's with 〈tshaux> 'and' ..... 153
3.4.1.3.1.1.6 Cautionary remark about high ..... 154 numbers
3.4.1.3.1.2 Ordinal numerals ..... 155
3.4.i.3.2 Special mumeration ..... 156
3.4.1.3.2.1 Usage with certain classifiers ..... 156
3.4.1.3.2.2 Days of the week ..... 157
3.4.1.3.2.3 Days of the Iunar month ..... 158
3.4.1.3.2.4 The twelve lunar month names ..... 159
3.4.1.3.2.5 Naming of offspring by birth ..... 160 order
3.4.1.3.2.t Numbers in lexicalized combi- ..... 163 nations
3.4.2 Classifiers ..... 165
3.4.2.1 Kinds of Clf's ..... 170
3.4.2.1.1 Auto-C1f's ..... 170
3.4.2.i.I.1 Noun-autoclassifiers ..... 170
3.4.2.1.1.1.1 Familial noun-autoclassifiers ..... 171
of concerted involvement
3.4.2.1.1.2 Verb-autoclassifiers: homo- ..... 172 phonous cognate objects
3.4.2.1.2 Verb-ciassifiers (V-C1f's) ..... 172
3.4.2.1.2.1 A selection of Verb-Clfis ..... 173
3.4.2.1.3 Specific Cif's ..... 174
3.4.2.1.3.1 A selection of specific classi- ..... 177 fiers
3.4.2.1.4 The broad-purpose specific Clf ..... 179 <nawm>
3.4.2.1.5 Measure C1f's ..... 181
3.4.2.1.5.1 A selection of measure classi- ..... 182 fiers
3.4.2.1.6 Group Clf's ..... 135
3.4.2.1.6.1 Selection of Group Classifiers ..... 186
3.4.2.i.? Round-number Cif's (Cif es) ..... 187
3.4.2.1.8 Quasi-cif's ..... i88
3.4.2.2 Reduolication of Clfos ..... 189
3.4.3 A note on singular/olural as a ..... 190 grammatical category in Mien
3.4.4 Polyquantification ..... 190
3.4.4.1 Fractions ..... 191
3.4.4.2 Independent multiple quantifi- ..... 192 cation
3.5 Special types of NP [II! ..... 192 stratival NP
3.5.1 Ouantified NP's with demon- ..... 192 stratives
3.6 Special types of nominal nucleus ..... 192(III): locational $\mathrm{NP}^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{s}$
3.7 Subordinative constructions with ..... 193 <nyei>
3.8 NP's with $N$ deleted ..... 194
n
3.9 Multiple structural ambiguity ..... 195 partially resolved by tone sandhi
3.10 NP's accompanied by particles ..... 201
3.11 The structure of the NP in tech- ..... 201 nical detail iphrase-structure (PS) rules)
CHAPTER IV ASPECTS OF THE NOUN PHRASE AND CLAUSE ..... 215
4.1 The structure of the VP ..... 215
4.2 Criteria for verbhood and some- ..... 215associated problems
(a) Failure to appear in the positive ..... 216
(b) Faffure to appear in the negative ..... 218
(c) Syntactic behavior in the negative ..... 219 not parallel to the positive: the case of <mv pei>

| 4.3 | Morphological aspects of the verb | 221 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4.4 | Overlapping subcategories of verbs | 221 |
| 4.5 | Verb-heads classified by morphological structure | 223 |
| 4.5 .1 | Canonical form of verbs: monomorphemic monasyllables | 223 |
| 4.5 .2 | Some verbs of dubious morphemic structure: polysyllabic verb morphemes or campound verbs | 223 |
| 4.5 .3 | Polysyllabic verbs | 224 |
| 4.5 .4 | Verbs containing an identifiable morpheme together with a morphan | 224 |
| 4.5 .5 | Verb compounds | 226 |
| 4.5.5.1 | Co-ordinate compounds | 227 |
| 4.5.5.2 | Subordinative compounds | 228 |
| 4.5 .5 .3 | Psycho-colloctions: are they compounds or syntactic constructions? | 230 |
| (1) | Selectional restrictions | 233 |
| (2) | Semantic unpredictability | 233 |
| 4.5.5.3.1 | Psycho-collocations, Wheart"extraction, and cross-language typoloay of sentience-construction | 234 |
| 4.5 .6 | Reduplication in verbal structures | 237 |
| 4.5.6.1 | Reduplication without tonesandhi | 237 |
| 4.5.6.1.1 | Reduplication of the verb without tone-sandhi, folicived by the particle <uav> | 238 |


| 4.5.8.1.2 | Feduplication of the verb without tone-sandhi, the elements separated by the intensifier/ extensifier morpheme <taax> | 239 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4.5.6.1.3 | Some generalizations on reduplication so far | 239 |
| 4.5.6.1.4 | Reduplication on adverbial phrases | 240 |
| 4.5 .6 .2 | Reduplication with tone-sandhi | 240 |
| 4.5.6.2.1 | Reduplication in adverbial phrases | 240 |
| 4.5 .6 .2 .2 | Reduplication of compounds | 242 |
| 4.6 | Secondary features of verbs: subcategorization | 242 |
| (1) | Combinability with <taic> as intensifier | 242 |
| (2) | Combirability with <tsienz> as superlativizer | 242 |
| (3) | Comínadifity with <tingc> as superlativizer | 243 |
| (4) | Come inatiifity with <jhienv> as a progressive aspect marker | 243 |
| 4.6 .1 | Auxiliaries iv , aux | 244 |
| 4.7 | Easic word order in the clause | 246 |
| 4.7 .1 | Constructions of givirg | 246 |
| 4.8 | Verb- for VP-1 serialization | 247 |
| 4.8 .1 | Second verbs as directional comTements | 247 |
| 4.8 .2 | The verbs <mingh> and <taain> used as aspectual/evaluative/diectics complements | 248 |
| 4.8 .3 | The co-verbial construction | 248 |

4.8.4 The $V+\langle p u n\rangle+N P$ construction ..... 249
4.9 Other constituents of the clause: ..... 249 adverbial expressions of time, manner and place
4.9.1 Time ..... 250
4.9.2 Manner ..... 250
4.9.3 Place ..... 251
CHAPTER $V$ CONCLUDING REMARKS ..... 253

Table of Contents

FIGURES

| 1(1) | Mien initia?s and combinations of initials with medials -y-, -w (Section 1.2.1) | 14 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 (11) | Mien rimes in syllables without medials (Section 1.2.1) | 15 |
| 1(111) | piten rimes in syllables with -y- medial (Section 2.2.1) | 16 |
| $1(19)$ | Mien rimes in syllables with -w medial (Section 1.2.1) | 17 |
| 2(1) | The upper-level canstituentstructure of a sentence, showing multiple layers (Sec. 2.3.4.2.2) | 36 |
| $2(11)$ | The constituent structure of the sentence <yietc nawn teficpung, sue maait naangc ngaate, maaih uav nawm teic-pung nyei dia-ei) (Section 2.3.4.2.2) | 44 |
| $3(1)$ | The constituent structure of the complex numeral <i-laank ifwaanc iftshin nyeicf. tsiepc三nyeic) (Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.21 | 150 |
| 3i1) | Structure of <yia bua pua tauh (mienhs mingh) (Section 3.4.21 | 167 |
| 3(111) | Syntactic structure of <yizbua mingh pua-tauh mienh> (Section 3.4.2) | 168 |
| 3(1v) | Syntactic structure of <ninh diqv jhawn yietc digv/dzune/ Dungefnyunge (Section 3.4.2) | 169 |
| 3(V) | The structure of a compound noun <touc-tauh) (Section $3.9)$ | 198 |
| 3 (VI) | The structure of the headless NP <toue tauh> (Section 3.9) | 199 |

Table of Contents．

| 3（V11） | The structure of the VP ceouc tauh）（Section 3．9） | 200 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3（VIII） | Phrase structure of＜ninh－bua f tauh menh）（Section 3．11） | 210 |
| 3ilx） | Phrase structure of＜chlaang uav teix i tauh mienh isec $^{-}$ きたの 3cII！ | 211 |
| $3(x)$ | Phrase structure of＜haiv teix i nawm tshia pua nawm phing uav nyunge）（Section 3．11） | 212 |
| 3（XI） | Pinrase structure of＜pua nawm phing uav nyunge i newm tshia＞ （Section 3．11） | 213 |
| 3（XII） | Phrase structure of＜naiv haivfnyungx？（Section 3．11） | 214 |

## CHAPTER I

INTPODUCTION
1.1. Iu=Mien_as_a_Miac_Yå_langyase Mien, Iu Mien, or Yu Mient, is a member of the miac-yao (My) trital languages spoken in Southern China in the mountaincus regions of the provinces of Hunans Guiztes. Sichuañ, Yunnang Gwangxi and Guangdong: and even ct the islanc province of Hainang ct which the Miac side is refresented in mainland scutheast Asia (North Vietnam, Lacs, anc ncrtherg Thailand), by the varieties of Mian "White" miac anc "Green" -- cr "Blue" -- Miao, sc-called from certair aspects of their dress). Designated by the Thai afic Lac variants of the Chinese name wiag, vize wém in that, arc its corresponisg forn in Lac, the Miad of lhailand Enc lacs prefer tc be referred to by the name "Hong".

As for the iao oranch of the family, Yao (yag) is their Chinese ethnonym, although it is not strictly linguistic, and is applied to certain languages eitrer not of the Yac branch of the Miao-Yac family, or not Miac-Yac at afl. Yac. properly se-ezlled from the lingistic foint of view is represented in Southeast Asia by two dialect, iu Mienh, and Kiar-Mun (Purnell 1968:137)s both with scme lecal variaticns. Iu mien is the most faportant brarch of the family in Scutheast asia in numbers and influence, and this alsc seers
to be true in China, where most cf the $Y$ ac are to be found. It is the typical flinguistically) $\forall=c$ dielect that is described in the Chinese linguistic works le.g.e Mao and Chou (1972) and for which raman crthcgraphies have been developed both in China, under the gidance of linguists, and in. Thailand by missionaries). The tien in Thailand and Laos prefer to be referred to ky their autceethnonym "lumien", or mmien" for short, and dc not like tc be referred to as "Yac", as the Thai and Lao do (Thai yáre and its Lac congenerl. In the name wiu Mien" <iug-aientilll the <mienh>
 it there is no contrast with other races in minds, while the <iuD-> part may represent a name of Chinese origing presumably in its Cantonese vocaijism, $c r$ it givy on the other hand represent an indigencus self-desicnatiorilzl [ifferent family trees for the Yao language tarily are given by Purnell (1970:137) and Mao, Meng and Zhenc (198í, cited in Soiait (1984 621).

Miao-Yac, in spite of Chinese looseness in their use of the words "miao" and myan" is a mell-defined language grouping, and comparative work has been cone ty Chang (1947, 1953, 196á, 1972, 1976 and nod.), Haucriccurt 11954), Pur-
inj for ortincgrany used in inis bock see secion 1.3 .5 belcw.
[2] See Cushman 1970:49-55.
nell (1970), Hac, Meng anc Zheng (1982): Chen (1982; Downer (1973) and Sojnat (19?e). Its trasder affiliations are nct certain. In the past it was groyfed witt Chinese, IibetcBurnan and Thai as "Indochinese" fir an cbsclete, brcad sense cf that term that included ianguages of India,
 old-fashicned meaning of that teral. The latter practice is Still maintained in mainland China, hhere the lean translaEion yan lang i=Chinese-iibetanmi is usec. Ccrnections have alsc been proposed (e.ges Forrest 1965) mith Austroasiatic; Benedict sets miac-Yac alongside his groufing that he calls "Kadai: lincluding lais Karr-Sui and cthersl and Austrcnesiang intic an overall grouping whist he refers to as "Austrc-Tai". At present the field of professienal epinion seems balanced between Benedict's vien:lalthough more attention has been paid to the Tai-Acstronesian connection than te the pcsition of Miao-Yaol and en inclinaticn to suspend judgment until more descriptive and histcrical work has been done, especially at the lower-arder cenetic groupingso Luckily such lower-order work is in prcgress: for instance, Mao, Meng and Zheng (1982\%, Chen (1982): anc Sclnit (1984). As for the difference between Miac anc Yac, Chang (n.d.:2) propcses te make it in terms of diachroric phenclogy:
"Yac dialects are those whict preserve the set of
finat consorants $[-R,-t,-k,-R,-N,-g]$ eisiner
completely or almost completely; Miao dialects

```
have either none of. these ininai conscnants or at ucst \(-\boldsymbol{H}\) and -gl . This classification coincides generally with the ethnic classificiticn indicated by the twc Chinese designaticns".
```

Such a distinction is toc one-dirensionel tc cover all the facts, of course, ano Solnit (1984) sesgests substituting for Chang's criterion that of the lass ci all prcto-miac-Yac final contrasts except the opposition cf nasalized versus non-nasalized rhymes.

Now when it cones to relating Hiao-Yao to fhineses there are at the heart of the problen two factors: (1) a sizeable group of lexical ifens in Miac-yao that relate, with varying degrees of certaintyg to Chinese; and (2) the Ignal system of Miao-Yaos which ecuates quite regularly with that cf Chinese in the words of the aforesaid groupe These two factors must be explained in terms cf genetic inheritance andfor borrowinge However, it aust be noted that although there are numerous Miac-Yao-to-Chinese cognates that are attested in both branches cf miac-Yao and are reccnstrastible for proto-niac-Yios a mejority of words with Chinese affiliations are confined tc Yac (more specifically. to lu-MEen!g with MEac showing EEfgety gecent Chinese leans (Downer 1973).
 Chinese loanwords in Mien: (1) Scuthnestern Mandarin
(modern, bcriowing still in processi, (2) Cantcnese loate indetermatat, and (3) an cider stratur, labeled, with scate reservaticns, midale Chinese (attestec by the dieyung fith-8th centuries, but some of che phoncicgical characteristics undcubtediy going back ec the 4 th cr 5th centuries). These three strata are distinct frcm the noras at the proto-Miac-Yao level first menticrec.

He may thus, as Solnit (nod.) says: pcsit an initial pericd of either Miac-yac-to-Chinese ssifact cr protc-Miac-Yao-nith-Chinese unity imich latter raises the protlem of what to do with Tibeto-Burman in this reccnstructions in order to acceunt for the protomiao-yao stratem. This unity woulc have to be at such a great time defth, and be cueriaid by sc uuch areal influence as to render the senetic versus contact distinction largely meaningless; at least as regards the comparison of syntax, and of morphalcgy fsuch as it was: see Section 2.4.1-1 et seq. belcu].[3] Fclloning this waid be a prolonged period of Mien-Chinese sor perhaps conacn Yac-Chinesel contact that is indicated ty the Middle Chinese and Cantonese strata. This prccuced a considerable infiuence on the lexicon, as on the cultural life reflected in this lexiccn.

[^0]It is nc doubt continuous migration associated with a continuous struggle for survival hhich.tas served to ditfuse the Miao-Yao peoples cver such a nice area and brought them in anc cut of contact with cifferent crinese sechcommuities. Large Miao-Yac comeunities have been brcken into saall groups: in a single district, in normal times, in their normal Asian habitat, several cifferent groups of Miac-Yac-speaking pecple, of different crigins and speaking different dialects, may live next to one another, next to non-riao-Yac peoples and next to speakers of varicus dialects cf Chinese.

This ncrmal situation of hedgepodge juxtapcsitica has been intensified by the latest chapter ct their odyssey cf survival: cccasioned by the Indo-Chinese nar, since members of different groups now find themseives in adjoining cubicles in refugee camps in Thailanc, and in adjoining aparto ments, tenements or houses.in the poorer parts cf Richmenc, Daklands and others parts of Californieg in the United States of America, and in simelar sithations in France and Canada. And for these trans-cceanic contingents of Miao-Yao at least, we may well predict that a multi-millennial epic of language raintenance will at best core tc a close. Eut such a shift of language (and culturel is perhaps nothing
[3] See, for instance, Habarad (rioc. (a) and (sis.
new for segments of the Miac and the Yac popitizions, for if Baliard (1981: is correct, the $H u$ ard pind diaiects of Chinese are nothing but Chinese learned and hended down by populations originally Miao and Yac respectively. And certairiy every effort is currently teing wace in thailand and Lacs to integrate these peopfe irtc the mainstream cultures of those countries. This may well te trie cf Vietnam as well, in view of the Vietnamese government's policies cf "dorestication" and demographic irundatinn towards the Ecn: tagoarss of central Vietnan (these pciicies merely representing the continuation of those cf the ansien cégiee towards the same people). [4]
1.2. Ibe_setting_of_Ihe_Eien_latstage:_Yao_dor_Mienl sylfuce_ang_historys Overall the best anc most complete ethncgraphy of the Yac is Wist (1938). Aspects cf their culture as they cope with conterforary concizions are dealt with in Miles (1972 $2,197 \mathrm{~b}$, 1973) ( Kandre (1967), Kandre and Lej Tsankeuei 1965, 1967 anc 19761. In their marldview they are a blend of animist, Confucianist and laoist tKancre and Lej Tsankcuei 1965: Lemoine 198äl. There is a fine study cf their lacist paintings ard associated beliefs in Lemoine (1982b) A very detaifed ethnohistory is Cushanan (noc.), that gives some idea of treir generally unfortunate

[^1]
#### Abstract

relations mith the Chinese over the centuries. At the present time the Mieng like cther ethicic groups cf indochina, are more accessible to stucy in their adoptive nem ccuntries than in indochina, e.g.o there have been at least two studies of the Iu Mien now residing in Eakland, California rade by students at the University cf California, Berkeley, and studies made by University of California, Berkeley linguistic students cf the language of Ci in now resicing in Richrond, Californfa, and include Ccurt (n.c.), Solnit (nod.l) and the present study.


Mien is an uawritten language, although varicus atterpts are being made to establish romanizec ways of writing it. The Chinese script is used for certain ritel purposes, and as well the clan names are Chinese characters. The Mien have two special song languages: one is used for ritual purposes and is pretty uuch eform cf classical Chinese. It functions as a scurce cf higi-style expressicn in the spoken language, much like wemyen in chinese. The other song language seems to be simply the Sothmest Manda(see below)
rin lingua francai $\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{i}}$ This is not to say, of ccurse, that the Mien de net sing as well in the croinary Mien language.
1.2.1 Circumstances_of_tie_studye cata was gathered from beth informants and the putiisted scurceso The language. recorded by Purnell and Lombarc nas cbviously vir-
rually identical with that of the inforaants sc that the two sources cculd be confjared inte a singie cherent description. Data was gathered in the pericos cf activity: septerber 1979-May 1980, and sporadically frcr August 1983 dcmn tc the present (August 1985) anc contitwing. All data from informants was collected either cr the caupus of the university of Califoraia, Berkeley or at ay hate nearby.
1.2.2 Ihe_informantse There were three principal infcrmants:
(1) F.L.; male: assisted Septerber 1579-pay 1980. was fifteen years old at the time。
(2) F.D.; maie: assisted spcradically frcm August 1983 down to the present time. Was 36 years cld when he began to work with me.
(3).M.Y.; female: assisted ficr the same pericd as E.O. and was 22 when she first began te nork with ge.

All the informants were extremety intelligent and articuiate, All hailed from the same Nam tha area of lacs, in the so-called wolden Triangle", anc hac been through the experience of rejocating so trat they lived side by side with ethnic lacs, first in:lacs and ther for five years in refugee carps.in. Thailand. They had this had heavy exposure tc Lac and Thai and were industricusiy learning English when

I was morking with them. In accition; fole had spent scre tine at a Chinese schcol and had a certain knowledge of a yunnanese form of Southwest Mandagin spcken Crineseo Inceed the latter language is something cf a kingua tranca in the hills of the Golden Triangle. Thus the possibility of interference from other languages in the cata that 1 collected cannot be discounted, tut I tope that my constant reference to the works of Lombarc and fernell counteracted this, and in any case mieng even ir its cun habitat, is under heavy infiuence from the various naticnal languages and lingua francas.

Access to the informants has been limited by varicus censtraints -- notabiy financial -- anc the fact that the more intelitgent, articulate Mien in the Eay Area are nore than fuily cocupied with surviving and heiping their brethren ac survive in the nek environment. Lnder the circumstances we have been able to treat scme subjects more fully than others, but we trust that the work will prove to be a useful expansion and elaboration $c i$ the first notes an aspects of Mien gramar to be fourd in the morks of Purneil, Lombard and Meng and Chou.
1.3. Dhgnglegye The descrictive fhcncicgy of Mien has deer presented in Downer ig6i, isij:isegrents and iones;e and Purnell 1965 (segments, tones, intoration, stresss jumc-
ture), and more briefly in furnell 19ic, wille a virqually identical dfalect has been descrited in $\mathrm{P}=0$ and Chou 1972. Therefore we will provide only a sketch here. A salient feature ct the dialect is the redection of non-fully stressed syllables (see Downer 19El:Sec. 3 et seq. and Purnell 1965 Sec. 112 et seq.). The first cegree cf reducticn affects only the tones: all contrasts are lcst uncer ifnesandti if certain syntactic and lexical cembinations; see Belcml. geyond the first degree of reducticn more drastic changes take place and Purnell (cfe cital distinguishes tho degrees ct reduced syllables hege: "ccritracted ainar syllables", and "neutral syllables". Neither Downer nor Purnell mention it specifically, but at the mastreduced stage vonel-harmony and voicing-harmony of the injtial consonant can take flace: e.g.s
(a) Ycwel-harmony: 〈gaiv>:[5] 7 gayl 'excrement' becomes [ 4 gu$]$ in <guO-khuatv> $[\downarrow$ gu $T$ khuat] sanus* ("excrement-hole");
(b) Initial_sonsonant_yoicing=baracnye <puaz> id puəl
 "finger'。

[^2]Heak-stressed syllables can be regardec as derived from fully-stressed syiables by stress-rectcticn rules of the Chorsky-Halle type lexcept that a fuliy-sfecifiec underlying forn is nct always synchronically reccueratlele for that reascn we shall from here on, unless ottermise statede be describing fully-stressed syllaties. These can temcst imeciately analyzed into segmental material and tones.
1.3.i Ihe_segmental_materials Hittin the syrlable it is easy te isolate the final consonantss but when it ccaes to the rest of the segmental material, if it is phonetically complea it is difficult io anaiyze its constituent structure in a non-artitrary manner. For instance, if he take a syl:able like $\{p y o p l=$ do we divide it intc an inizial cluster [py] and a zemainder, or into an initial liplyius a iredial" [y] plus a rime [op]? Or do we divice it inte an initial [pipius a fising diphthong neclecs [io] and a final [pl? With a syllable like, say, thiatl, do we interpret this as $[h]+\{i \theta] \ldots$ or as [hy] $+[\theta]$....? [ifferent approaches have been adcpted by different pecple cescribing mien. In the present work 1 shall use the interiediate missionary crithegrapiny -- a new one has just teen adcpted -- and present an anaiysis of the syllatie that is fairly clese to theirs, since that makes easier the trarsicion from phonetic spelling tc the ofthographyo first, the initials cf Mien, according to this analysisg can be seen in figure $1(1)$.Chapter13.
Aspirated stops and aspirated scnorants count as singlephonemes. Medial [-y-] and [-w-] are treated as madials"in the sinclogical sense, and the combiraticns of initialswith aedials are also stown ir. Figure lill. The vocalicnuclel of Mien are displayed as the heacings of the rows inFigure $1(11)$ and the final conscnints are shown as theheadings of the columns in figure iliIf. To generate thesyllables with medials, combine Figtre llll with figiresiflify and ifiVi, overiapping the medtals.

## EIGURE-1:1)

Mien_Inifials_and_fentinstions_si_Initials
with_Medials_-y-,-**

| F | Py | pw | t | - | ts | tsy | tsw | $c$ | k | kw |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ph | phy | phw | th | - | tsh | tshy | tshw | ch | kh | k hw |
| t | by | - | d | $d y$ | $d z$ | dzy | - | $\pm$ | 9 | gw |
| n | niy | aw | $n$ | ny | - | my | mw | $\int$ | T | nw |
| hrim | - | - | nin | - | - | - | hmm | nf | $n \eta$ | - |
| $f$ | fy | fw |  |  | s | sy |  |  |  |  |

i
h1

```
\(*\)
\(y\)
ini hy
```

NGIE: Unaspirated soncrant initials are pregiottalized in the odd-numbered tones.

## ElGURE_1111

Mien_Biqes_in_Syllatles_Hithsit_Medials


* occurs enly in same dialects in twc contracticn forms
 being \{inay] and [ $\rfloor$ nay], respectively. My inforwant used $[m]$ in these farms.


## ElGuRE_1(111)

## Mien_Bimes_in_Syllables_wiit_-y-_Mesial



## EIGURE-1(1Y)

Mien_Bimes_in_Syllables_mith_-y゚_redial

1.3.11 Historicaligrigin_of_ths_segoental_uiteriale There are many gaps. in the data, tut for an attempted reconstructicn cif inc souñós of lu-Mien back tc Miec-Yao see furnell 1970, and remarks in Downer (1973:8-10). For correspondence with Chinese see Downer (1573), Eenedict (1985), and discussion in Solnit (n.d. Section 1, 6.1).
1.3.2 1he_teres_cf_uiens Inese are:

1. upper mid level 1
2. mbd.falling $Y$
3. high, scmetimes rising-faliing 7, 7
4. rising-falling, somewhat breathy \&
5. rising 1
E. Ick, creaky d
6. nigh, checked $7^{\prime}$
7. Icn, checked $\mathrm{d}_{1}$

Tcnes 1-6 cecur in live syllables, 7 and 8 in deac syalables. It is convenient in transcripticn tc combine tones 7 with 3: and 8 mith 6, as we have cone Aspirated initia?s, except [h-] itself, do not co-cccur with the even-numbered tones in. native mien iords. There seems to be a certain tencency arong the younger generation ec reflace Tone 4 with Tone 5.
1.3.21 Ione_sorrespondence_mith_cbineses. The tones are number here in the manner ct Chincse lirguistics: codnumbers for "clear", even for mucdy*:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A=1,2 \\
& B=3,4 \\
& C=5,6 \\
& B=7=0
\end{aligned}
$$

(see Chang (1972, or nod.) for detailsh. The point is that While the tones can be reconstracteds at least in terms of correspondencerules if not in phonetic shape, back tc protcmiac-Yao, they correspond in quite a regular way with the shinese historical tone-sategcriesin items of shared vocabulary. The correspondence is one-te-cne in preanodern strata cf shared vocabulary, tit the correspondence is many-tcone and the corresponding elements are cifferent in the rodern stratum cf Chinese lanwords in Mien where Southwest Mandarin's five tones are beirg watched up against Mien's eight (see Downer 19773:1C).
1.3.22 Ione=sandine There are two rules:
(1) Tcnes 1-6 become Tone 2 (or soretting clase encugh to be incistinguishable fror itl.
(2) Tcnes $\boldsymbol{7}$ and 8 become. Tcne 8 (or, acains something close encugh to be indistinguishable from.it).

For discussion see Downer (1961), Purnell il965: Sec. 2.22. 1968:xifils and Court: fortheczing: ind fassim in the present mork.
1.3.3 lifighatigen This has teen described in consicerable detail in Purnell (1968:Sec.2.211 and z.22le In general it seems an excellent account but sirce 1 have not been able tc replicate it in certain details; mor to get complete
agrement among my informants, imill nct go further intc the matqer here except to remark (a) that imtcnation tends tc interact in idiosyncratic ways with each lexical tone, and (t) that in general intonaticn plays a bigger rele in Mien than, say, Thai because it has a special intonation where Thai uses the particle. ryy. This is the "meta-questica" intcnation (see Chapter 2 sov. structure cf questions).
1.3.4 dunctures_cr_pansese he have distincuished the pausal junctures -- ", comme-juncture, and "o"pericdjuncture. In terms of rhythm a feriod-juncture is longer than a comme-juncture, and the pitch-ptienosena involved I have cn occasion marked in phonetic urackets, and for the rest would in general equate period-juncture with Purnell (1765)"s mincrmal intonation", and commeojuncture with his "sustained intonation" (op. cit. Sec. 2.211. z. 22 \%
1.3.5 Octhgacapbya The following changes will produce the internediate-period missionary orthographiy aitich we have folloned (except perhaps in cne or tho Eincr details) in the present work.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { "c" >"jh"。 "f">"i", "f" > =ny": } \\
& \text { "hf" > "hny", "g"> "ng", "fg" > "hnges }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { > "ie" elsenhere. }
\end{aligned}
$$

except that *zy > "ef".

In addition the intermediate-pericd orttcgraphy has mra [r], "uei $\quad$ IE:jl, and Euea" [fol, equivalents for which were lacking in the cld or thography, fcr representing mords frow other languages. The tones are indicated ty silent final conscnant letters as follows:


An additional detail cf my own is the use of wow tc mark tones which are phonetically like Tone 2 , tut mbich are nct identifiable phonglegIcally either as Tcne 2 cr a sanchitone, because we have not discovered the rorpheme bearing it as a free form, where the phonolcsical tone wculc be identifiable.

CHADTER II
THE TYPES OF SIMPLE SENTENCES: THF SENTENCE TOPIC: THE CLAUSE: SENTENCES SIMPEE AND CJMPISITE; PARTS RF SPEECH
2.1. Introductione $H e$ have found it useful, following Matisoff (1973:Chapter 11), ic recngnize ine chain of speech in Mien as beinc broken intc utterances, of various functirns, and structurally rensisting of either sentences or framents. The sentences are either simple or composite. in terms of order of constituents sentences may also be permutec. Still following Matisoff on. cit. the basic terminoloay that we shall be using for types of sentertes and linquistically significant parts of sentences may be fresented as a kind of deductive systen in which certain concepts ("head": "constituency", "behaves as a gramnetical unit", "relationshid": are left undefined. In the following definitions, our approach is eclectic. Sometimes elements are defined in terms of their syntaceic structure, and sometimes operationally ie.c., boundable by a pause, drecedable by the negative adverb, and so onl.
2.2. Ihe utterance: The utterance is a stretch of meaningful speech tinat conforms to the ruies of Mien orammar as we shall here describe them.

2．3．Ihr sertence．A sentence is redresented in the utterance by 2 stretch of speech bounded by pauses，or fotentially bcunded by pauses，terminated by certain intona－ tions anc／or parqicles，and containing at least one phrase．

2．3．1 What＿is＿bundej＿by＿the＿rcacess＿may be＿a＿simele cr＿sompgsite＿utterance．A sentence is a free form，since it is bounded by pauses at bith ends and hence producibie in isolation．Thus，〈yia mv mingh＞＇I am not qoing＇ $\mathrm{in}^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{I}$ not co＊）is elready a sentence，but 〈yia mv mingh aa＞©I an not coing any more＇（＂I not co NEH－SIT ASPW）is an enlarged sen－ tence of which＜yia mv mingh＞forms only a parte Aqain ＜ninh nv taaih．yiamv minch＞iHe is not coming．i an not going＇represents a sequence of two sentences but if the pause between 〈taain＞and 〈yia＞is omitfed，then the whole thing is one composite sentence，showing typical garataxis， and meaning either＂He is not coming and l am not going＂or else＇If／when he doesn＇t come， 1 won＇t／don＇t oo＇－－for dis－ cussion of composite sentences，see Sections 2．3．4．3， 2．3．4．3．2 below．

$$
2.3 .2
$$

Prosociceelements＿may distinguish＿different constituent arounings＿within＿the sentence．Just as prosodic eiements mark off the sentence，so they distinguish dif－ ferent groupinọ－into－sentence－constituents of the sane sequence of sentence building elements，thus producing dif－
ferent sentences；e．c．．，＜ninh tsoux（，）mv lonạ〉（with an cotional break after 〈tscux＞），That he does it is not goof； re had better not do it＇yersus＜ninh tsoux mv lonox＞the cannot do it well＇，in which there is nis possibility of a treak after＜tscux＞．The comma－break establishes what pre－ cedes it as a topic（see Section 2.3 above，and Section 2．3．4．3．2．1）．

2．3．3 Utterances＿and sentences＿as＿speech＿acts．We may distinaijish et least six kinds of speech act，lll and each of them is typically realized by a particular kind of sentence：
（a）Statements of states＿of＿affairs：these take the form of declarative sentences，
（b）Promptincs to the interlacutor to act or to feel in some particular way，taking the form of commands，suages－ tions，requests，entreaties，appeals for calm，sympathy， etc：：＜mv tuov kawnov＞snon＇t say it＇，〈piaqu pyaur oc＞＂ūo come in＇：〈tsueix oc＞＇Do sit down＇，〈thov tsaah oc＞＇please
 ROT： goix！＞${ }^{\text {Get out！＂（＂Move［so as to bel separatediml，Ctaeac }}$ naiv：＞＇Come here？＇（contracted from 〈taaih naiv＞：

[^3](c) Questicns: e.a.s <mein finax haiv-nyuncc?> What is your surname?', 〈yiem lonax nyei?> Are you well??.
(d) Addressative_exnressienss including calis to peorif. in mien often followed by the vocative particie <a3>.
 the reduolicative and asyndetic <kawx kawx yiouz yiouz> (129) PFriends (male). ("gia-brother big-brother [and] little-brother Iittie-brothera - as if we said in Enalish "Lady, lady; gentleman, gentleman for "Ladies and Gentlemen").
(e) Responses tomuterancenyoes_lal-fcl: e.g.e responses to addressative expressions: <aax> Yes?: What?", <haiv-nyungc?> Yyes?" (what?w), and the response used in answering the telephone: <haiv-tauh?> "Who is this?: who is speaking?* ("Who?").
(f) Exclamations: E.ơ.g (1) <tse-kengh?!> Really?! You don't say!': < | ov! sim pagर yia!> "Ouch! I qot pricked by a needle! (much! Needle prick mew), (2) <khawo-fiat haic aa) (L 140) What a great pity!" ("regret much Prt " (3) <feixttuqv aenọx Dwatc meits (L 197) ©he that I could see you again!", (4) <aafyuvi> (L b, an exclamation of surprise, dismey, or exasperation), and (5) 〈yiouv-q> (L 313, an exclamation of pair: Buch!".

### 2.3.31 Einal_remarks_sn_sentences_as_speech_actsa $3 F$

 course, as is well known, there is no one-to-one correspondence between kincs of speech act and kinds of sentence: c.g., in English a prompting to action may, for policeness" sake, take the form of a aucstion, e.cog mon't you sit down?". Greetinos are a kird of addressative expression and yet in mien a very common greeting is in the form of a ques= tign: 〈yiem longx nyei saa?> which in the absolute means "Areyou well?" ("[you] be-in-a-state be-well Prt quest response is in the form of a declarative sentence cyien longx nyei> "Yes I am well" ("I bewell Prt ").
2.3.4 Siructure of the_sentences He will distinguish between a sentence and a clause, and assume, for the sake of exfosition, a sentence as far 35 oossible context-free, i.e., initial in a disccurse lexcept for responses to callsl, and tree of anaphore and elliosis. Other kinés of sentences can easily be understood as situational or contextual alterations of these.
(1)

$$
s \rightarrow\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
(a) & \text { (Topic) Comment (Prt } \\
(b) & \text { Vocative Expression }
\end{array}\right\}\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
(c) & \begin{array}{l}
\text { Response to Utterance-- } \\
\text { type (a)-(c) of } \\
\text { Sestion } 2=3.3 \text { above }
\end{array} \\
(d) & \text { Exclamation }
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Sentence consists of (a) an adional todic (TOp) followed by an obligatory comment (Com), followed by an odional final farticle (Prt ) or (b) a Vccative Expression or (c) a $5 f$
Fesponse to an utterance-type af (a)-(c) of Section 2.3 .3 ahove, or (d) an Exclamation.
(2) TOPic $\rightarrow\left\{\begin{array}{lll}(a) & \text { clause } & \text { (Den rop } \\ (b) & \text { np } & \text { (Prt }{ }^{\text {top }} \\ (c) & \text { vp } & \end{array}\right\}$

The topic consists either of (a) a clause, or of (b) a wp or (c) of a VP, in each case followed by an optional topic demonstrative (Dem ${ }_{\text {top }}$ ) or topic particie (Prty lo The conment has the structure
(3)

$$
\text { Comment } \rightarrow\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\text { vr } \\
\text { clause }^{n}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Comment consists of a VP, or else of an indefinite number (though in practice at most four or five) of clauses.
(4) Clause $\rightarrow\left\{\begin{array}{ll}(a) & (N P) V P \\ (b) & \text { Sentence }\end{array}\right\}$

A clause consists of (a) an optional NP, followed by an obligatory VP, or (b) of a sentence.[2]
[2] Note that the effect of my rules is to disiinquish two differgnt levels of arammatical analysis, the sentence and the clause, as was indeed both the ancient and modern granrratical tradition until the perspective of transfiormational still going strong in varinus current orammatical theories. Note thai rule $3(a)$ the NP is, by our non-insistence on the topic/subject distinction, a tobic-cum-subject. Further gramatical investigation is needed to determine to what extent the full set or topicalizable entities is admissible at clause, as opposed to sentence-ievel: whether, for example: in a sentence such as <yia i-hnoi minah tsoux kona> i'm goinc to work today', we can identify the structure, as, say (i) or (2) below, or perhaps even as somethinc else (note that it is possihle that in both (1) and (2) <mingh tsoux kanc> 'so to work' is a constituent, but that needs further investiqation and is irrelevant for the present purdose):
(i)

(2)


See also follewing footnote.

VP, The form of a clause, or $a \forall P$, as well as the prototypical form of an NP, withcut the clause or VP havino to be specifically nominalized, although they do, alone with NP's, have to occupy the leftmest position in the sentence, and they mav, but need not be frillowed by topicalizing demonstrativps or particles. These latter should perhaps be recarded as nominglizing-cum-topicalizinc demonstratives or particles. These latter should perhaps be regarded 35 nominalizing-cum-topicalizing entities, in order to bring languages such as Mien, which allow Clauses and vpis to be topicalized -- and this is an areal feature that inciudes Chinese and Thai -- into line with the apparent universal fact (or perhaps it is a matter of definition) that topics are nominal (see, for instance, Li and Thompson 1976:fn. 3). They would presumabiy count as "inanimate nouns", demonstrating the mien, like other languages in the area, can topicalize to the bottom of the watural Topic Hierarchy". [3]
[3] According to Foley and Van Valin (1977:294),
"There appears to te a universal hierarchy of inherent topic-worthiness [sc. of nominal expressionsl calied variously the "Natural Todic Hierarchy" (Hawkinson and Hyman 19751, "Inherent Lexical Content Hierarchy" (Śilverstein 1977) and "Referentiality Hierarchy" (Foley 1976). The Hierarchy in universal terms is:

```
spfaker > hearer > human proper
                                    > human common > animate
                                    > inanimate."
```

2.3.411 Nominal_expression_as_tapice (A slash divides the topic from the rest of the sentence). E.a., <yia / laqc-khuatv mun (L 288) vry chest hurts' ("I / chest Furtwi, <tomt-mienh nuei tsingh-nyeic / kwance mu goi> The senerosity of nne's elders cannot be ignored" (welters Frt generosity / [if one] discards [it, it does] nst subord [result in it] be:ng-separatedw.
2.3.412 Ihe yert_ptrase_as_unpic[4] Eg.g <minge/yaac tuac, mi mingh / vaac tuac> DOne can either oo or nots (ngo / also be-possibie, not gn / also be-possibie", <hlaang / yaac hlaang, daauv / yaac daauv> 'It is indeed both hiọh and long" ("IAs for] being-high / indeed behigh, [as for] teina-iona / indeed be-lono ${ }^{27}$, <aaengx / oixłtsuac tov

Given our understanding af the "todic", iee.g not strictly differented from the "subject" and redresenting simoly the leftmost NP, or other grammatical structure in the sentence or clause, and set off actually or potentially from the rest of the sentence or clause in various ways ffor a distinction between subject and tobic see Section 2.3.4.2 fn.l. There is nothing in the above hierarchy that cannot be topicalized, and there are cther thincs - adverbial phrases of time and place, verb phrases, whole clauses, in fact virtually enything, that can. That is to say, we do not accept Li and Thompsen's (1976) limitation of the topic to NDPs.
[4] It is arcuabie that what is the topic here is underlyingiy a clause, so that the fresent section should not be separated from Section 2.4 .1 .6 below. To this we would reply that it is by no means always easy to say what the deep structure subject of such a clause would be, and that in any case, hewing closeiy to the surface structure makes for a much more readable, if less principled, account.
tshuatv) (L 144) VIf semethinc aets stuck in the throat it shculd te vorited out" ("have-obstruction-in-throat / haveto vomit out") <tsweiz jhunh / huv> (L 104) ©Sitting on the
 be-spoiledw).
2.3.413 Iime_expression_as tppics E.ge. <hnaanathnoi / oix khoi uic> (i 9) 'There will be a meeting the day after tomorrow' ("The-after-tomorrow day / [some personis)] want hold neeting"), <mv teix tshamx hnoi / via mu maaih kond tsnux) "These deys I have no work" ("This PLURAL period-of-time-from-twelve-to-twenty-days / I not have work to-do"l, <i-hnoi / maaih maencc yien, jaangthnoi/taic/yaac iv hiuv tuav> (L $3 \in 0$ ) "Today we are alive, but we do nor know Whether or not we will be dead tumorrowe i"foday i iwei have life PRDG-ASF, tomorrow [whether we will] die /indeed not know be-atle"). Note that the second half of this sententious utterance is itself an entire clause with a double toric: see Section 2.3.4.1.6.3 below.
2.3.414 Plase_expression_as_tapic. E.g., <yiem uav pyauv f yia aav-tsuac thengx maz haic> vit home, I have to help my mother a lat' i we-lscated there house $/ \mathbf{1}$ must help mother very-much(*), 〈yiem ninh / benge sung taaih〉 [1 311) Through him ${ }^{\text {Ithe matterl was satisfactorily settled }}$ ("be-located-at him / [one] deal-with [the matter, with the
result that it] te-settied PERF-ASPD) (yietc teix haiv-dau $/$ yaac $n v$ minch acy (i 363) wot a single diace did he [nowl go to' ("One someness [of\} anywhere/indeed not qo NEW-SIT ASP*).
2.3.415 Iocics_that_can_be_interpreted_as_egents introduced_by a_irepcsitions <yaac liemh ninh / taaih>
 <yiem ninh / bengr sung taaih> (L 311) Throuah him [the matterl was satisfactorily settled' ("be-at him / arrange be-settled PERF ASP").
2.3.415 Ciauses_as_ingicss Eono. (1) <ninh-bua taaih / уэас tuqv, mv taaih / yaac tuav> 'They can either come or not' (NThey come falso be-rossible, [they] not cone / 3iso te-possitiew), (2) <yia-bua mv maaih mienh nawfaeq/isoux raiv tsianax> 1 If we con't have a person to help, it won't
 it [will] not [result in] beinq-finished"). (3) <ninh taic naic / yia dawtc hnyiouv haic nyeis 1 l am very sorry that he


[^4]In the above exampless either the conjunction <vaac> 'al so; indeed' or the tonicalizinc demonstrative <naic>, or the topicalizing particle <nawfaea> 'as for' mark the transiticrifom topic to coment (see Section 2.3.4.2, et seq.), but it is possible for the juncture to be paratactic, i.e.. tor there to be no partiries or aiverbs to mark the transition: g.o., (1) <mv maaih jhaa $/$ mv maaih faanax> (L 99) Without a family, there is no status" (wot there-be fanily / not there-be status"): (2) <lungh mv tuih byungc / kciv tuqv mingh> (L 30) 'If it doesn't rain, then we can changs our pians and go" ("Sky nnt precipitate rain / there-be-arevision be-ablp on"), (3) <meih kawng siepv-siepv, yia mv fieqc hnyiouv> "If (or when') you speak cuickly, 1 don't understand ("You speak be-quick=be-auick / I not enter heart"), and (4) <mh teix i tauh mingh haivfdau / mv hain mingh) 'The two of them were not up to going anywhere" (wem PLU two cif go where / not be-anie to gō).
2.3.4161 Suryey_of_ascount of_topicsofare we have suggested so far that various entities includina tine exfressions, verb phrases and clauses may be topics, and that tofic verb phrases might underiyinaly be clausal.

We would like at this foint to hark back to an exanple sentence in Section 2.3:4.1.3 above and provide a possible tree diagram of its surface constituent structure, assuning
that its two immediate-constuent clauses are in topiccomment (i.e., hetero-ordinate) relationship (see below). Note ticat what are semantically time-expressions llikewise place expressions), and were so called in Section 2 3.4.1.3. are syntactically adverbial ohrases.

## FIGURE_2(I)

The_Uncer-Level Constituent Structure_of
a_Sentence, _Shcwino_Multiole_Layers_of
Topic-romment Structure

Si-hoi_meaih_maencc viem, jaancthnoi_土aic_yaac_my_hilix_士uay>
'Eyen_if_today_we_cre_alive,_we_still_do_not know_whether or noíwe_willnbe_fead_tomorrow-

2.3.417 Sentences_with_resultative_complenents: are they of wtopiczonment"-structure? A notable areal feature of China and South East 4 sia is the resultative complenent construction, in which the second clause, commonly reduced
to a bare verb, expresses the result of the first: e.g., with unreduced seconc ciause <meih jhaaux tuav / yia piaac tnyiour) (L 112) "You are atle to teach in such a way that I cэn understande $\{$ "You teach be-possible [resulting inl I enter heart"), or <ninh hatv tuav / fuac-jhweic buaac> (cf. L54) THe is atle to command the respect and obedience of the children 1 FHe cormand be-able [resulting in] the chilcren be-respectful/ obedient/cooperative".

We may have a bare vert reoresenting the second ciause, as in <mient naiv / jaaux / mu mangx> (cf. L 112) iThis person does not do as he is taught" ("This person [somebody] teach not [result in his] listenina*i, and <nais paenge / tsawc / longx> (cf. L 69) 'This illness / can be treated / successfully" ("This illness treat [result-in] recovering").

We would like to suggest that it is possible to interpret these resultative sentences as having the siructure "topic-comment", with topic-comment breaks at the piaces where we have marked them, and with the verb to result in" raving to be mentally supplied lsee Section 2.3.4.2.1 below).

To the extent that our investigations so far have determined, not only do sentences or clauses with resultative complements seem to fit perfectly into rhe topiccomment pattern (a claim which may raise some eyebrows), but

```
Ferhaps more surprisinaly, clauses that translate into En-
flish as "actinn verb + adverb of manner" also seem to fit
this pattern: c&. the resultative compiement sentence
<tsweiz jhunh / huv> (L 104) lif [youl sit on the shirt it
will spoil it" ("sit skirt / be-spoiled"), and <fiav dza3nge
/ uv haic> (ct. L 9) 'to lbe ablel to write [i.e., to form
written characters] curninoly' ("write characters / be-
cunning very") or <mwangz / lonox oc> (L 249) 'Do listen
Carefully" ("Listen / be-good Prt "), <yia jhuix dzuanx
nolit
minch / lauh ac> (L 105) 'Y sent it back lono a00' (ej send
return (be-a-long-time NFW-SIT-ASPu). Here we can still
bring it under the resultative semantic scheme: -- wto write
characters so that the result is cunningness", "to listen so
that the result is carefulness".[6]
```

[^5]2.3 .42

Ihe_scmantics_of_the_toric=comnent_consiruc=
tions wie have for the most part not found it necessary in Mien to distinguish between topics and subjects.[7] Thus for a sentence such as 〈yia, lage-khuatv mun〉 (L 288) iMy chest hurts" ("1 / chest hurt"), theuah we have said that the first $v p\langle y i a\rangle$ '1. is the topic, we will not insist on 3 difference between topics and subjects: so that we might pqually well call this sentence either a "double-subject sentence" or a "roubie-tonic sentence*. When we use the wnrd wropic* in the strict senses we mean the first mubject* in a "cousle-sutject sentence" andfor a constituent set off by a topicalizino item lthe latter to te defined by listing, whife "subject" is thus left to refer to any NP other than a topic hefore the VP.

Rut it seems possible to describe the semantic relationship between topics and their comments, and subjects and their predicates ty a single set of statements, and we have expressed the view that all simple deslarative sentences in mien that are not elliptical, or anaphoric consist of a con= ment preceded by cne or more topics (see section 2.3.4). The semantic relationship in mien of tooic-cum-subject to
[7] The term and concept pivotw as used here and in Section 2.3 .4 .4 .9.2 is a surface structure term borrowed from Ch30 (1968:124), and intersects but does not coincide with the transfcrmationally defined term as used by Heath (1075) and nixcn (1979) lboth cited in Foley and Van Velin (i984:108 et seq.).
croment is cornaratle to thr todic-comment semantic relationship in ether languaces such as English. iee.e nuch troader than the indc-Euronean subject-predicate relation -which tends semantica?ly to be either "agent-action" or "subject-stater -- althnuah the mien relationshid includes these.

A case in which the topic is in fact the agent is provided by the sentence <nawfaeq wuav tauh auv aeqv $/$ tawh jhienv dzuanx taaih> iAnd so the widow (lit. "wife") brought [it] back: ("And so pem cif wife take do-for-futurereference return come").

### 2.3.421 Sentences_where_xerbs_have_te_bementally sura

 riled. An instance of the "subject-state" meaning is ctseiv muic wuav tauh ac / mo-siaquftawn 'Tsei Mui, for her dart. was a Girl' (wise Mui Der Cifort / lbel female-hunanbeing"). It should be noted that there is no verb in this sentence - at least on the surface, and this is typical when, semantically, membership in a class is being predicated of g or rather, is the comment being made about, the tofic. We may lile to think of the sentence as containing a zero-verb ito be". But other topic-comment sentences force us to "think intr them" other zero-verbs.Take, for instance, <mua tauh mienh / duac jhieqe
tsaux> That man has only one lea' ("That cif person/sin-
cle cif leg"), where the verb <maaih> 'to have' could be inserted atter the thoic/comment break, although the sentence is auite cramatical withcut it. We seem to need a meanina rf "to be afflicted by" in <mh taun aur-kwav-mienh naic $/$ toc-naanc nyei> :The widow was having a very difficult time" ("That cif wirnw nem / tryinerifficulties PROG-ASDN), tof while it is "to yield, to produce" that seems to have to be "thought into" the sentence <yietc nawm tshuge / tsiepe tiuh riuh ( 1 339) "ine rice-seed [produces] ten sprouts" imone Clf rice-seed / ten Clf sprout"). More problematical as to the sentence structure and to the verb concedt to be supplied is <yietc seix / tomh-mienh, i seix / kub-nqwaz> (L 533) '[For] one life [nne is] an adult. [but forl two lives -- a child', where 1 have taken 〈yietc seix> and <i seix> to be topics, but they minht be quantifiers of the following noung yielding "IOne hasl one life's worth of adulthood, [but] two lifers-worth of childhood", in either case meaninc situatinnally that somebody is in hisfher second chiifinood. finally, if sentences mith resultative complements are indeed oi the "topic-comment" structure, then the verb to be mentally supplied is "to result in".
2.3.422 Ihe_fopic=corment_copulas_se_or_suee Although Mien sentences mey, as exemplified above, contain no verb at all lat least on the surfacel, there exists in Mien a copular particle lit actually acts very much like a verb, but
cannot be freceded by <meiv> the neqative particie: see (hapter IV belok:) taken from the chinese shi ((AD \#990)), which in a less assimilated form, as entered in Lombary (212), is pronnunced sue $[$ | s_ls but which our informants csually pronounce se. It is usually, if not always optional, and giver the semantic vaqueness of the todic-comnent rolationship it is hard to cive it a well-defined transiation: the clesest we can come is to be; the fact is that: it is the case that', but it is often untransiafatie.[8] Let us take an easy case first. where it corresponds to the verb 'so bef: <naiv / se byunac-suiv-imx nyei kouv> 'This is the story of the Great. Flood' ("This se Great-Flood Prt subord story"). Next, let us take same examples where its meaning is clear, even if not easily translatable:
(i) <loz-hnoi naic $/$ se lungh aiv nyei> 'lona aqo the sky was low (*Ancient-days Dem / the-fact-istop
that sky be-low prt uq9] -- later in the text assert
this sentence is repeated without the se).
(ii) <naic baqc-ong / se kamo-dziax haic, nawnh-tsiunawmis "The Thunder God was very afraid of then --
[8] The deneral idea of interpolating se between topic and corment is reminiscent of the Mandarin shic...de construction. (J.A. Matisoft, D.C.)
[9] The use of se before a sentential comment bears an intriguing resembiance to the use of iz presententially in Yiddist. (J.A. Matisoff, p.c.).
the sanana lpaves' prem thunder / the-fact-isthat be-afraid very, banana-leaves"),
(iii) <mein / se chiemx-tsuqc lawz haiv-nyunoc fai?> Do you want somethina?" ("You it-is-the-case want seek something Prt cues

Finally we have a couple of sentences where it is clear that the main function of se ~ sue is to mark the beginning rf the comment: example (1) <yietc nawm teic-pung, sue maaih naang naaatc, maaih uav nawm teic-pung nyei dia-ei) (1 338) Ir any country, if a snake bites someone, that country has its own treatment" ("One cif country, the-fact-is there-is snake bite [someone], there is Dem CIf country Prt treatment."): Ehis sentence has the structure shown in figure 2(11),

## FIGURE_2(II)

## The_Constituent Siructsenof the_Sentence <zietc_nawk_teic-pung,_sue_maaih_naange_noaztc, maaih_yev_newr feic-punc_nyei_dia-ei>

-In_any_ccuntry, iés_snake_bites_somenne, that_ceuntry has_its_cwn_treatnent".
-

in which there is structural parallelism between the clauses that marks them as forming a singie constituent lsee Section 2.3.4.3.2.2.4 below, and this parallelism would be disrupted if the first clause were construed directly with the initial Np, as micht be pessible without the sue acting as a divider; exarple (2) <nawh ninh / se awv, mv lawz haiv-
ryunoc＞ And she said，＂nh，rm not lookino for anything＂． （wThen she $/$ se rh，not look－for anything＂）here the so rarking the becinnina of the comment is especially useful． since the crmment consists of direct speechs and the word ＜kawnc̣〉 tto say，speak＂，which usually precedes tinis has teen onitted，presumably for the sake of narraisive vivid－ ness．It could just as well be inserted，in which case it． would form part of the topic：＜ninh kawngy／se awv．．． （etc．）＞＂As for what she said f it was＂Oh．．．．＂（etc．）＂， end a grammatical development seers to be under way in which ＜sue＞or＜se＞is tecomine the complenentizer，though still cDtional，for reported speech and quoted material（see，for instance，L 131）．［10］

## 2．3．423 Sentences＿hhere＿conjunctionshaye＿to＿be

 mentally supplied：parataxise So far we hope that we have demonstrated that so long as the topic－comment caesura has been adequately marked．all manner of relationshidso which can be conceived of as ynderstood verbs，are possible．But［10］It is possibie that the m＜．．．kawnon／se $x>*$ construction（where $x x^{\circ}$ stands for qū̃edmaterial） meaning ．．．．said：＂xw：arises from a syntactic blend between one construction with＜kawnev＞＇say＂，and without＜se＞，in which the oucted material stands as an cbject of the verb of saying，and another construction mithout＜kawngv but with＜se＞functioning as a iopic－ comment copula and with ine quoted mater ial cast in the roie not of onjecr but of comment．if bhe blend of these two constructions becomes fixed，then in the jux－ tarcsition of 〈kawngu＞and 〈se〉s 〈se＞could be reinter－ preted as a compiementizer．
there are other cases, where both tonic and conment are slayses, and what has to be "thought in" are canjunctions showing the logical relaticnshin between the propositions signified by the clauses. This omission of conjunctions between clauses, is, of course, traditionally known as parē= taxis.

It is highly characteristic of Mien, as well as being an areal feature, but in a linguistic model that distinज̣ishes surface structure from teep structure, it is a surface-structure phenomenors since it includes, as we shall see, both cases of co-ordinacy and hetero-ordinacy between the constituent clauses. E.g., <faux phaang/ douh thei> (L 337) To climb up onto the dryinc-platform and have the iヨdder taken away on you' (wascend drying-platform / land then] lift-with-two-hands tend removel lader" -- an aphorism which means situationally 'To be left in the lurch; to be left out on a limb"). Here the connector which has to be "thought in" is "and (then)", but there mey te others which frave to te supplied, as we shall proceed to demonstrate.

Take, for instance the sentences <saa-taungh-dzuin, yangh-meuz=hnyicuv) (L 333) The mouth is sweet, but the heart is poisonous" ("Sugar-mouth / poisonous-weed heart"),
 sinks, the expanse of the sea remains' (neoat sink / Lbut
stillu there-be the-encs-of-the-san", an aphorisn which situationally means 'An agreement must be kept, no natter what circumstances may develod later on'. Note that we may semantically conceive of the promositions in the last three sentences as teinc related either unzer schema (a) "Proposition but (or and) Proposition ", or schema (b) "Eyen 1 2 if/ihough Proposition, nevertheless Proposition ", [11] and this seems to mean that the sentence is ambiguous[12] between being ccordinate (schema (a)) or non-coordinate (schema (b)): "sutordinate $\{$ concessive) Proposition -- orincipal Proposition".

Another meaning of the topic-comment relationshid where both topic and comment are clauses is "lf Proposition liee.s the topicl, then Proposition (i.e., the comment)", and indeed all conditional sentences have the structure vTopic-

[^6]Comment", with the protasis formino the topic and the apodosis the comment, whether rer not the reletions are overtly marked by conditicnal conjunctions or particles. Two exanfles showing parataxis, i.e.g havinc no conjunctions and particles, are <kaav taaih / oixftsuqc jhaauv> (L 124) 'If someone has borrowed imoney], then they have to reday it" ("borrow PERF-ASP; must repay"), and <lunch miv tuih byunge / koiv tuav minghy (L 130) lif it doesn't raés. de can chenge our plans and co" ("Sky not precipitate rain / revise be-dossible go"). The meaning of iff easily shades into 'when' or 'whenever': witness the second-last sentence abrye, and the sentences <rein kawnov siepv-siedv / yia mV piaqc h:yicuv> iff/when you speak quickly I don't understand ("You speak be-ouick=be-quick / I not enter heart"), and <ninhfbua dzuanx taaih / yiन mvftaih pun sou ninhfbua> (L 361) Dof course ill give them the books when they return ${ }^{\prime \prime}$ "they return come $/$ i of-course give books them").[13]
[13] Ne would sucgest that it is just as risky to sucgest that speakers of $M$ ien understand the relationshis between paratactic clauses in terms of (syntactic) deep structure, as it is to claim that the speakers understand the relationship between the elements of nominal compounds in terms of (syntactic) deef structures. The fcotnote belnw reqardina the underlying structure of compound nouns 30plies mutatis mutandis to paratactic e?auses, except that perhans context is more important and as a factor additional co real-world knowledoe in the interpretation of Daratactic clauses than it is with compounds.
2.3.424 foncludinc_remarks_on_togic=cominent_seman= tics. The vagueness of the Mien thoic-conment semantic relationship is perfectly comparable to Chinese lsee Chas 1968:69-72), muct brnader than the subject-predicate reiationshid in European lancuaces; and indeed, given the number and variety of thinos that can be ieft understood, it wosld seem broader than the topic-comment relationship in European lanquages.
2.3.43 Sentences_simole and_comeosites So far we have described in some detail, and down to a certain level, the form and the semantics of the sentence. We have gone into the form and semantics of the topic-comment structure of the sentence. He have discussed cases in which the topic was a clayse or a vp (which, althnuah it lacks a subject/todic, is for many ourposes equivalent to a clausel. Ihese constitute cne kind of comonsite sentence -- ie.., one kind of sentence in which two or more sentences for clauses) find themseives in close combination forminc a single unitary sentence.

In practical analysis, several more or less severe problems have so be dealt with, largely arising from the facts (a) inat mien is not a written languace, and lacks punctuation, (b) that Mien is (at least in its surface seructure; marketiy paratactic and asyndetic - e?auses for vp's) are just strung together with conjunctions largely od-
tinnal. These include $(a)$ deciding which strinos of words are candidates for clausehcos (see Section 2.3.4.3.1 below), (b) decidina which strincs of clauses group themselves together into single compesite sentences lsee section 2.3.4.3.2 below), and $(c)$ deciding what is the relationshio among the constituent clauses of a comblex sentence - coordination, or hetero-ordinaticn of one kind or another isee Section 2.3.4.4 telow),
2.3 .431 Hhich_strinas_of_verts_or_verh=phrases constitute clayses? The essential problem here is a form of farataxis with reduction, vize the areal linguistic feature of yerb-serializatien or vp-serialization in which strings of verbs and verb-phrases routinely find themselves in juxtapositiong and which is further complicated in these languages ty the frocess of zerg-anaphora, and sometimes tos by aranasin or name-avoidance. which places even more verbs and verb phrases cheak by jowl. He will defer discussion of this topic, assuming in the followina sections that this particular problem has been solvedo
2.3.432 Comnosite_sentence_or_seqarate_sentences? since a composite sentence consists of clauses each of which ray well seem complete in itself, how can one tell whether any given succession of ciauses in surfece structure redresent parts of a composite sentence or simply sedarate
sentences? This depencs n several factors: (a) prosodic elements, such as pause, intonation and voice-ouality !throuah these features rerisire further study), (b) adverbs or conjunctions as markers, and (c) parallelism of the sentences.
2.3.4321 Prosodic_elements. In <id-hnoi hnoi yaauc raic \{0/.\} yia mvfpaac mirẹh tshuatv mv tuqu) "The weather is very good today $\{$, but/. Eut\} I can't co out' ("Today day te-good very $\{, / .1$ I but no emerce not can"), it seems to be basically the presence of a ouse corresponding to the "." which narks the utterance as representing two sentences, though there could well be intonational of voice-quality features playing a part: e.g.. the final word of the first serment of the utterance, 〈haic〉 'very' has a low rone, and it seems to be a rule that $\underline{\text { a }}$ low tone is accompanied by creaky voice is sentence-boundaries. In the followina sentence, we would expect prosodic elements, reauiring further investigation, to be Derforming a double function: (i) weldinc the twe clauses into a sinale sentence, and (ii) distinguishinc the coordinate structure of meaning (a) fron the ron-coordinate structure of meaning (b): <meih pwatvyia, yia pwatc meih), (a) You see me, [and] lise you, and (b) 'If/When you see re, I see you'.[14]
[14] Two empirical questions are involved here: (1) what prosodic means are available -- potentially there -- in order th resolve structural ambiguity in the

2．3．4？221 Ioficalizers＿and＿sinole＿conjunctionse single conjunctions suct as＜aenox＞（L 4）（with variant＜aancx＞ ใL 7． 338 No．24i，and＜aencx－tshaux＞＇andf，used，apparent－ ly indifferenty，before the topic of the second clause）， and 〈yaac＞（L 314）＇and；alsc：however；even so：moreover＇，
 iowever：also＇，〈tshingx＞（L 175），〈tshingx－taaih＞（L 175： and perhars 〈taair：＞alone iin one of its many uses，lite＂to come＊），and＜tsinuc＞（L il），all of which are used innedi－ ately before the $y p$ within the comment，and mean iand se， therefore，then，after that＇，and finally the topicalizing demonstrative＜neic＞and the topicalizing particles＜nam＞： ＜aeg＞or＜nawfaed＞used at the end of a clause（and so topi－ calizing it），can all combine clauses into compound sen－ tences：
（i）＜mv paencx patv naiv／jhieav，aenox－tshaux jv paengx patv／yaangh＞＂This pen is black，and this pen is yellow（＂This Clf for Sen ，be－black， top and this clf pen be－yellow：
language as a spoken medium；and（2）in any particular utterance or act of speakinc，whether any of these means wes actually used（and if so which one（sl），or whether in this case the utterance is structurally am－ bigucus．
(ii) <uix aepv / vaac maiv tuav hin> (l 129) iwe keed ducks tut they den't live long encugh to get big" ("!He] keed ducks / but-even-so \{they] not aet-to be-tig');
(iii)
(iv) <yunaz taaih tawn-jtiweiv dongc naiv tshanv $\quad$ mvf paac hnangr niv naw aix ninh> 'She had brought this multitude of children into the world, bur they were ocing to fill her like this" "rShel give-birth-to PERF-GSP children be-as-much-as this bemany, but [they] like this way kill herw:
(v) 〈yiá dzemz tsucc puaz / tshingxftaaih biax> (L 45) il lay with my head on my arm and now it feels tingly: ("II] lean-head-on (unintentionaliy-) affect arm / and so be-tingly");
(vi) <ninh taic naic / yia se dawtr hnyiouv haic nvei> 'I'm very sorry he died" (we die Dem /It Ccpula fall heart very-much DUR-ASP号: tepic
<mein mv maaih nyaanh nawtaed / mein tsiouc maaiz mv tuav 'Iffsince/then you don't have any money,

```
it is rot possible ror you to buy it" (myou not
have meney Prt / you [therefore] buy not be-
tco
possible").
```

Put these conjunctions may have to be considered alona with cthey fastors in order tn decide the guestion of whether or not they are in the same sentence as the preceding clauses since they cften seem to be in a new sentence, e.g.e <vien naiv/ tshinc̣ hwaax kan pun soi taaih) (L 301) Then it was that the transformation and [resuiting] division took place" ("be-located there $/$ then transform accompany give/cause te-separate fERF-ASF*).

The onset of a conditional clauses which will constitute a topic and thus form a composite, conditional, sentence with whet follows may, but need not, be marked sy〈setkəwnov>, <kawnqufhnanav>, <sefkawnqufhnenav> or simply <hningv>, all meaning vif: e.ge, <kawngvtinangu phien / cav-tsuạc koiv> (L 139) If you are wronce you must set things right' ("If be-out-of-line/ have-to rectifv [itlw), <hnangr mv nix longe tang mvfnawfac / hnangvfhaivfinam kawnav? "If I don't want tre light, what should I say" ("If not wish use lamp this-[being]-the-case Prt/like-what. say? ${ }^{\text {² }}$.

A clause of reason may be introduced by the conjunction <weic> (L 303) "because" and this will bind it to the

```
precedinc clause: e.c., <ihimxtmingh wuav puaav aea / mV
Hiuv aq, weic ninhfbua nyei hunat-tiax dawtv dziouv mingh, ＇as for the rist croud，I don＇t know，because their king－ father died too smon）（＂I move－on＝a0］DC Dem Clf group Prt tod \(/\) not know NEW－SIT－ASP，tecause they ort king－father fall be＊early Excess－COMP日？．
```

2．3．43222 ．Eeneated conjunctions＿or adverbial＿phrases mヨy＿heio＿to＿tind＿clauses＿ints＿a＿sinale＿sentences＿esonュe
（A）the repeated conjunctions＜．．．yaac ．．．yaze ．．．） ＇both ．．．and ．．．．；either ．．．or ．．．．；neither ．．．．nor＇，as exemplified in sentence
＜sou／yaac maaih，patv／yaac maaih＞（L 314） ＂There are both books and pencils＂（＂iAs for books／also there－are，［as for］pencils／also inere－are＂；or sentence
＜nyaiv fyaac nyaivs dzaauh／yaac dzaauh＞（L 314） To be beth ashamer and sad＂（＂Ias forj being－ ashamed／be－ashamed，Ias for］being－sad／be－ sed ${ }^{0 \prime}$ ）s or sentence．
（iii）〈im／yaac mv im，swi／y尹acmv suic＞（L 3i4）© To te neither bitter nor scur＇s or sentence

(P) the repeated adverhial phrases <yietc sih ... yietc sih ... yietc sif (etc.)> (L 311) Virst ... then .... then ...; at one time ... at another time ... at another tine ...i one minute ... the nexi minute oos the next minute, etc.f as in <yietc sih hlang, yietc sif aiv, vietc sif faux buanx kulongwaaic, yietc sih yien 引uanx kãieniaiv (L 311) PFirst hioh, then lok, one minute above the clouds, the next minute bereath the clouds [as an airplane]'.
2.3.43223 Correlative_seniunctions_and_adyerbs may bind clauses into composite sentences: e.g.,
<... haivfdau ... uav> 'Wherever ... there ....', as in <meih taic haivfdua, yia yaac taic uav> (L 65) "Wherever you die, I will die there too', or
(ii) <... haix... haix> Hhenever/Hhichever/Whatever ... therefit', as in <heamy thatr haixa kampgy thaux haix> "Whatever [he] thinks, he says"

|  | ("think arrive-at whatever, speak arrive-at whatever"), (L $\qquad$ ) or |
| :---: | :---: |
| (iii) | <yietr ... tsicuc> 'as snon as ... then ...', as |
|  | in <yietv heiz, tsiouc pyaux aq> (L 310) As somn |
|  | as [he] heard it, [hel left' ("As-scon-as hear, |
|  | then leave"l, or |
| (iv) | <taant-faanh ... tsinuc ...> Whenever ne. then |
|  | ...', as in <taan@-faanh kawnor / mienh tsioue |
|  | hiuv dzengc> (L 69) 'As soon as you say anythina, |
|  | people then know all about it' (Whenever say / |
|  | people then know be-allm), or |
| (v) | <congx haix ... yaac ...> ${ }^{\text {chowever much ... }}$ |
|  | nevertheless ....', as in <donge haix yioux nyienv |
|  | jhienv / yaac tsucc mingh) (L 360) * However nuch |
|  | he dislikes it and cries, he should goo ("be-as- |
|  | much-as whichever dislike [and] weep DUR-ASP/ |
|  | nevertheless should $\mathrm{gom}^{*}$ ), or |
| (vi) | 〔... yaac ... yaac ...) (see section immediately |
|  | preceding), or |
| (vii) | <... kunv ... kunv ....) (L 129) The more ... the |
|  | more ...', as in <nint kunv jhienv kox kunv jhienv |
|  | jhunh) (cf. L 129) The older she gets the fattor |
|  | she becomes' ("She the-more DUR-RESERV ASP be-oid, |

 you' ("Provoke me/l whack you");
(iii)
<maaih taut tscux konge maaih tauh aalGne parsen works, and another plays ("There-is [one] []f do work, there-is [onel cif play"), or
(iv)
<mv meaih jhaa, mv raeih faangx> (I 99) If [you] have no family, you have no status".

Note that as composite sentences, these may be con= gound, made up of cogordinate principal clauses land so be translated according to the schema "Cl and/but Cl "), or carglex, with ci functicning as todic yieldina the
 "As for $\mathrm{Ci} / \mathrm{fi} \mathrm{m}, \mathrm{etc}$. And once again, parailelisn of structure may still need the aid of prosodic features in order to bind clauses into a single sentence, since mien abounds in anomicisms and sayinas characterized by parallelisp of structure which ds seem clearly to represent a so= suence of sentences, not onf compnsite sentence: e.o.. (with numbers inserted to mark where the parallelism begins): (ll) yietc nawm eshuọ / tshiedc tiuh miuh. jhapv taaih / nyanc raiv dzenoc. maic pun jhanx-daeqc-miuh. (2) yietc nawn tshucv / tsiepc tiuh ewreah. jhapr taaih / nyanc nair czencc. maaic pun jhanx-aavfkhaal (L 339) ifil One riceseed [produces] ten sprauts. When harvested there is nore than can be eaten $f{ }^{0} \mathrm{f}=0$ Harvest PERF-ASP eat not beexhausted ..."). [One] sells it to the White Meo. (2) Ene
rice-seed [produces] ten branches. when harvested, there is more than can be eaten. [One] sells it to the Ekha.o. which nas the situaticnei meanine 'The harvesi was plentiful and there is a surplus that can be sold to others'.
2.3.44 Is_the_cnrigesite_sentence_compound_er_con= clex?___If_comalex___what_are_the_exact_relations_among_the carts? Let us try first to rive principles for distinguishing compound sentences from complex sentences.
2.3.441 Earatactic_sentencesi_Deen_structures. in may cases to be discussed below, we will have conjunctions to help us distinauish between compound sentences and complex sentences. But farataxis is also very common in mien. let us hark back to our exemple: in Section 2.3 .1 <ninh nu taaih. vie mv minch>. We noted that the two condonent clauses micht $\{a\}$ represent a succession of two separate sentences, if there is a pause between the clauses, here witten "."; but if there is no pause we bave possibility (b) a singie, comecund, sentence with co-ordinate clauses meaning ${ }^{\text {He }}$ is net cominc and lor but) I am not goino', and (c) of a sincle, complex sentence, meanino iffithen he doesn't come, then I don't oc'. Since the construction is in each case paratactic, what syntactic, as opposed to semantic, reasons do we have for distinguishing cases (a), (b) and (c)? The answer is a recourse to deep structure: case
(b) is restatable with various co-ordinating conjunctions which we must presume are either oresent, or in cone way coded, in deep structure:
(i) <ninh my taaih, aenex-tshaux yia mv minah> the is not coming and $I$ am not qoing", or "He didn't come and l dion't goe.
(ii) <ninh mv taaih, via mvfpaac mv mingh> iHe is not comine, but 1 am not going (either)' or 'He didnct come, and I didn't go either".
(iii) <ninh yeac mv taaih, via yaac mv minch> oNeither is he coming, nor am I gning', or 'He didn't come, and so I didn't ac either'.
 is not coming, and so 1 am not going', or "He didn't come, and so I didnet gof.
(v) <ninh mv taaih, yia tsiouc mv mingh> the is not comino, and so 1 'm not going'.

For case (c) where the sentence is complea we must again presume that the deep structure codes the conjunctioninsertion possibilities shown below:
(i)
<ninh my taaih nawfaed, yia yaac/yiouc mv ningh> 'If/When he rcesn't come, then I don't go'.

```
        <sefkawrev (fhrancv) nint: mv taaih, yia yaac/yiouc
        mv minat!> 'If he coesn*i cũnz, then I don't go'.
        <hnangv minh mv teaih, yia yazc/yisuc mv minc̣h>
        'If he doesn't come, then I don't q0'.
```

(iv)
<weic ninh mv taaih aeo, yia tshingx(-taain) rv
minghl 'Because he does not come, I therefore do
not $\mathrm{ac}^{\prime}$.
2.3.4411 Irfeversibility of the order of the_clauses. If the two clauses in the sentence <rinh min taaih. yia tr mirgh> ${ }^{\text {He does not come. } 1 \text { do nof go." are reversible }}$ without any (very great) chance of meaning, the chances are that they constitute a sequence of sedarate sentences. It is also possible, civen a diminution of the dividing paise that iney could constitute two ce-ordinate clauses of a sincle compound sentence. It is most unifkely that it is a complex sentence, for then it would have by our analysis a topic-csmment structure, and the reversal of the order of the clauses, without some specific overt marking of the fact, which would in fect mari it as permuted, i.e., as havinc undergone a right dislocation transformation, would reverse the toDic-comment relations thence the subordinatesuperordinate reletions), yielding a different grammatical entity.
2.3 .442
advertial_phrasese sih ... [etc. ${ }^{\text {l }}$ ronstructions. The clauses are co-ordinate. For examples see section 2.27(b)(ii).
2.3.443 Alternative ouestions: Here the structure is "Cl 〈fai> Cl ?"; and we interpret the two clauses as co12
crdinate: e.g., <naiv im nyei fai kaam nyei?> ils this bitter or sweet? ("This be-bitter Prt sweet Pre *). For more on auestions, see Section 2.3 .5 et assert seq. below.

### 2.3.444 Sentences_with_clausal_subjects/tapicse is we

 have stated, we have rot found it necessary to distinguish between subiects and todics, whether clausal or not. is we rave also stated we consider the topic/coment relationship to be non-coordinate, with the todic being the subordinateo This is in terms of a kind of dependency-theory principle, whereby the comment is equivalent to a predicate or verbs which is the head of the oroposition, and the tooic is an arguments a dependent item. Sentences with ciausal subjectsftopics are thus complex. Examples of such sentences may be found at Sections 2.3.4.1.t, and 2.3.4.2.3 above. We inciuce among such sentences, those with resurtative complements (see Section 2.3.4.1.7).2.3.445 Sentences_with_arolificatory_clausese The second clause, perhaps aiways with acent deleted, through the operetion of Fcui-NP deletion, mmolifies or explains the first: e.g.g
(i) <yia kawngr nunz ninh 1 heuc kwanac foi mv tung nouzl, I mollified him, callina on hin Amp-C1 to disrecard your offense anc not hate you" (L 260) ("I mollify him [ Amp-cl tell [hin] todistegard [resultinc-in] be-away [your offense, and] donft hatew,
(ii) <yiafhua paatc ninh long̣ tsinh tonge nyaanh> (cf. L 24) We fine him paper money and silver" (We fine-hir. $\{$ have-recourse-to paper-noney, Amp-C1
have-recour se-to silver] Amp-Ci"),
liifi <ninh tshongh tshongh tshiax tshiax I Amp-CI tseangr sin tingc\} (cf. L 181) He rocked Amp-C1
and swayed and veered this way and that, trying to regain his balance' (0He rock rock go-off-at-anançe go-off-at-ar-anale [trying] keepbalanced [his] body [resulting-in] be-fixed] AmD") Cl
 coughed a lot with a coldf (whe be-afficicted-with

$$
\text { a-cold } \left.A_{A m P-C 1} \operatorname{couch} a-1 o t\right]_{A m D-C 1} \text { "), }
$$


 macicl "). Amp-C1

Althouat it should be observed that amplificatory clauses shade off into clauses of purpose we can still note that with an amplificatory clause, the latter is in a kins of apposition to the first -- to fine somebody, taking naper goney and silyer, to have a colr, caughino a lot, to sway anc stacger, $\quad$ gezinics one's halances to byows mekinc mezic. etc. An example of a elause which is transitional between an amplificatory clause and a purpose clause is <ninh heuc wuanc doh suix> (cf. L 223) 'He called back [the person's] soul, tying it [inside] the bodv with thread" ("He call soul tie thread"). 1 have translated it here as if it were amflificatory, nut basically the action or state referred to in $3 n$ anplificatory clause has to be simullaneous with that of the principal clause lalthough this is a matter of decree, and of a point of view that can be changedl, winite the action or state $\mathbb{c}^{f}$ the purpose clause is basically (a) subsequent to, and (b) the intended consequences of, thet of the principal clause.
2.3.4451
yerbs_of_emotion.

Sentences_with_clausal_complenents_after So far the sentences containing amplifi-
catcry clauses that we have dealt with have had a connon sutject in sact clause which has been deleted from the second clause by the oderation nf Equi. But sentences secur in whict the principle clause predicates an emotion and the seccnd clause, which is in paratactic constituency with it, states the occasion of the erotion: e.o. <yia chiax jhiar naic, ninh kawnov naic pun yia> 'I was very ancry that he said that to me' ${ }^{\text {EI }}$ I terper rise a-lot, he say that aive me").
2.3.4452 Sentences_confining_the_word_Spingx its hide: _to_act_surreptitiously _combined_into the_structers
 an areal feature, and we interdret both the <pingx> and the vp as clausal (the vp havinc lost its subject through EquiNP Deletion: and the $v$ as an amplificatory clause: oto act surreptitiously, VP-ing'. Examples are

(ii) <ninh pingx jhienv $\left\{{ }_{\text {Amp-ci }}\right.$ neaicl ${ }_{3 m p-c i}^{>}$(cf. L 16) 'He sold [itl surreptitiously'. serious_intent:- Suct sentences are an areal feature, and we suggest here that in Mien, at least, the word <aaj-〔zyaauc> is here a reduced clause, and its (surface) structure is otviously paratactic with the proceding clause, and the meaninc is transiticnal between an amplificetorv elause -- 'to VP, playince, anc a purpose clause -- 'to VP in order to play'. E.g.e, <ninh kawngy [ Amp-Cl aah-dzyaauc] ${ }_{\text {Amp-Cl }}$ 〉 (cf. L 6) 'he roiled arcund playfully; he tossed without
 l 130) ${ }^{\text {the spoke }}$ in jest; he said it for fun'.
2.3.446 Sentences_with_purncse_clausese This section is to be read in the light of the cmparison and contrast of rurdose clauses and amplificatory clauses made in Sec= Iion_2e324x4e5 atove. In sentences with purpose clauses, as with various cther types of sentence we have been discussing parataxis reigns supremp: scme examples, of which the first twe are proveŕnial expressions.
(i) <nuev hiauv-pieac tsiac hlauv-toke> (L 335) To burn the thin bamboo in order to scorch the yellow bambnc" ("burn thin-bamboo lin orderl scorch the scixe-nambol ia yellou type of bamboolvig the situational meaning being sto vent one's wrath on an
> intericr nerson in order to cet at his suderior'. and
(iin)
(iv)
< jinux tuqu tsing kemin, maiv dzaauh-heix tsaançhtouz fuav) (L 337) To preserve the forest in order not to be worried [abost having enough] firewood tc burn' ("oreserve [resulting-in] beinginvinlate the forest, [in order] not beworried [about] firewood burnwl, the situational meaning being Yeip others and yous will never lack people to helv you in time of need'.

〈yia chiemx-tsuoc lonọe myaani maaiz lai-hnaanox> -1 need to use money in order to buy food' (wI need use money huy food"),
<ninh punqx touz tsaax meih> (L 162) © He is showing encer in order to test you" "He enit fire (i.e., to display anger) [in order] test you"). Possibly another example of a sentence with a durpose clause, althcuah it is open to other internretations[15] is <ninh an dia jua bonq> (cf.
[15] It could, for instance, be a resultative sentence ("She put in the yeast resulting in the bread risinqule With parataxis, cr, as we are more likely to cal? it when the clauses are reduced, verbserialization" or "Vp-serialization", many ambiguities remain to be cleared up by the context, but in practice it seems that they almost always are.
(113) 'She put in yeast in order to nake the bread rise" ("She put medicine bread rise").
2.3.446i Puronse clauses_after the verbs_of motinn
 common: e.g.e.
(i) <ninh aan-loc faux kullongiaaic lungh mingh dzyaauc tshaux nyutc-taixfhungh> She always went up to the sky in order to visit the Sun God" "She always ascend up-into sky [in order] visit be-with Sun-Gcde),
<yia taaih thenax meih-bua tsoux kongs vi have come in order to work for/with you" ("I come in order] dn-with/do-on-behalf-of you do work®), (yia taaih thov dia nyanc> $=i$ have come to ask for medicine' ["] come [in order] request medicine pet")

They are, of course, reduced ciauses: they never have a sut ject/topic of their cwn lif only because of the oberation of Equil: and they are enibedded: any final prts apply to the principal li.e.g matrixs clause: e.q.s in <yia taain thov dia nyanc aç 1 have [now] come to ask for medicine", the now-situation espect particle <ag> appifes to the verb <taaih> to come' not the vers <nyanc> "to eat".
2.3.4462 Sentences_with_clauses_of_reason.
2.3.447 sentences_with_sugted_slauses_as_clausal_oh= jects: These are clausal complements of verbs of saying, asking End thinking, e.g., ij; <ninhtnye: maa kawngy a-aav, tawn-jinweiv vaac tsyanch-hatngh> Their mother said, Hivell, you are cocd childrenwe. ("Their mother say fa-a-av, rffspring inceed be-richteous*). (2) <nawh ninhfnyei tawn ... naicfkaax / maa, meih kengh oix nyanc baa-ong tsonz nyae? 'So her son asked, "Mother, io you really want to eat the Thunder-God pickled". ("so her son ... ask / "mother, you really want eat Thunder pickle Prt ? ${ }^{\circ}$ ).

We might be tempted to included ciauses of perception. The reason for this is that clases after verbs of saying and asking, and presumably by extension, of thinking, are eftually gucted forms, as evidenced by the fact that they can be followec by the auotative particles, <kaqcfni> (L 121), after cuoted statements, and <naw 0 -ni> (L 261) efter quoted cuestions: e.g., <ninh kawng oix nonge pyei batv kaqcfni> il 121) ve said he wants four baht -- he said) (HHe say wart possess four baht prt m), and <khuv auot nyei fai nawo-ni?> (L 201) "noes it taste good?e, he asked" ("taste-good Part Prt Prt w). For clauses of essert quest quot
 dien't hear him reply to me" ("Not hear he/tim answer me"),
rut such sentences are hetter treated as Rivoial constrys= ticn, which themselves are enother kind of complex sentence (see the next section.)

### 2.3.448 Ecst=oivotal_clauses_as_objects:_he_oivaial

 sonstruction. A pivotal construction is a surface structuro phenomenon. It consists of two overlapped clauses where the object of the first clause is the subject of the second, and thev arg identical in form, and that form occurs on ly once, i.e., is a pivot[16] between clauses: e.g.g
## nun

〈yia heuc ninh mingh>
pwate

| let/cause | go/to oo |
| :--- | :--- |
| tell nim | to go |
| see |  |

in which the piyotal word is, of course, <ninh> ve/him*. Note that in the English translations the corresponding
[16] "piyotw is beinq used here in the sense of Chao (1968:124), and not that of Foky and Van Valin (1994) and others.
mord, $\operatorname{him}$, is nct quite se pivot-like, since it is clearly cbjectival in surface-case form and is thus embedded in the first clause, and further that complementizers may be present in the post-pivntal clause: -- the infinitive with in, the particinal -ing-form of the verb. But, however that may be, in both Fnglish ant Mien the second clause is an object of the first, thus subordinate to it, thus making the overall sentence complex. A somewhat more elaborate example of the pivotal construction is <yiz maiv buage nv laanh nienh kunv yia> (cf. L 54i il cannot submit to this person's control" ${ }^{11} 1$ not submit $[t o l$ this person control men).
2.3.449 Sentences_containing_a_relative_clause IRCIE A relative clause is a modifier standing in constituency with a ncun phrase, the whole constructinn itself beina a noun phrase, and thus part of a clause lunless it stands alone as a fraomentl. Since the R. is dominated by a clause node, even if not immediately, it serves to make the dominatina clause, and any sertence containing the dominating clause complex fror fe's incorporated into nominal compounds, i.e., dominated by a $N$, and modifying the head noun of that con-

2.3.4491 Structural varieties_of_celetive_clause: In this section we enclose the relative clauses in unlabelled
square brackets and underiine the head noun.)
(a) The simplest kind of relative clause is $a \operatorname{VP}$ to the right of the head NP: e.g., <naiv nawge $\left\{\begin{array}{c}\text { daix] }\end{array}\right.$ Vinis is a hird that is fiying ("This f lisl bird [fiypul <naic saeggffawngfnawmh \{uix fei-krenal> $(c f . L 212)$ Those are mulberry leaves for feedinc "silkworms" iwithose fiarej mulberry-leaves lfeed silkwormsi"). If the head Np is the coject of the verb, we call the structure a mpseudo-pivotal ennstruction": spe Section 2.E.E4e4e9e2.
(b) Another kind of RC is to the left of the head NP and is connected to the head by the particle <nyei>: e.g., <neiv itsou nyanc nye] nawce $\quad$ This is the bird you boil be-
 [nabua kenv taaih nye] mient> 11 am the person they chose" ("I [an] [they choose Aspect Prt] person").
(c) Another kind of RC is preposed to the femonsirative + Clf + N: <raic tongh [nyiachnoi tshaa yiaj yay tauh mienh> "That's the person who cauaht me the other fay" ("That is the-other-day catch me that CIf person").
(d) Another kind pleces the RC to the rint of the head NP and terminates it with the Demonstrative <uav> ithet; there whose function seems ta be resumptive:\{17\} <uay manio
[17] In Tha: the pronoun nan diays a similar resumptive roie: e.g.: naalikaa thii phon Raw may k nan

```
mong [yia fawh minoh laanh tsawc uav] meit nye mong> iThe
clock that l tcok to the shop to be repaired is yours'
"That clf clnck! take no shop repair that [is] your
clnck").
```

    2.3.4492 One_kind_cfreduced_relative_clause: the
    eseudoanivotal_sonstructiong In the pivotal construction,
the pivotal NP is the subiect of the second clause, in the
pseudo-pivotal construction it is the qhiest of it, e.g.:
lawz

| <ninh | meaih | kona I | tscux] $>$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | RC | RC |
|  | pun |  |  |

is-seekinc.
-He has work [ to dol ${ }_{R C}$
gives
[some body]

Another nice example which is more striking because the "pseudd-pivot"-Np <daam> "a shoulder-loar", is homophonous with the verb in the reduced $R C$ is <ninh naanox jhienv tsoux

Fthe clock i took to be Fepaired'. There are more examples of Thai relative clauses with resumptive nan in Section_2.3.4.4.E.4 below.
 RC RC cether in order to make a load to carry" ohe attachtogether DUP-RES-ASP make shoulder-loan carry on shoulders*): for some remarks on meroholngical questions raised by this last sentence, see Section 2 fan 2 below.

The pseudc-pivotal construction are a kind of blend of a relative clause with a purpose clause. Ihey are (reduced) rel эtive clauses[18] but they clearly contain the ides of purpose: one is looking for work in order to do it, seaking food in order tc eat it, and so onell9]
2.3.4493 Another_kind_of_reduced_reletive_clause the_RC insornorated_into_the_nominal_compounde Incorporated reduced relative clauses may occur either to the left or to the riaht of the head nouns under circumstances which recuire further investioaticn. For examples, see Sec= tions_3.3ء4』_3.3.4e1e 3.3.4.2e

```
    2.3.4494 Various_syntactic_Ioles_ofthenpsemthat
can head_Rc{s:_Ine_Accessihility_Hierarchy*s Keenati and
Comrie (1862) discuss in implicational hierarchy of iNP ac-
[18] At last semantically: we shall not attempt here to establish the deep structure and transformational rules needed in order to derive them.
[19] In Latin one can nicely combine the relativity and the purposiveness of ciause by comd ining the reino tive proncun with the subjunctive mood: e.ọ. faciat petit "He is asking for work to do'.
```

```
cessibility to rc-formation in various languages. The
present the followina hierarchy of such accessibility lit is
known as the Accessibility Hierarchy):
    subject > direct ofject > indirect object
    > object of a precosition > genitive
    > nt ject of a comparative particle
```

1 am indebted to Cavid Solnit for mnst of the fnllowing examples (which $I$ have taken, by permission, modifieg from Solnit n.d.l demonstrating RC's with heads of descenting rank in the fierarchy (RC enclosed in square brackets, head N:P underlines; l have respelled his examples and modified some of them sifohtly):
(1) head of $R C=$ subject

```
<lyia toac jhienv] my cuanv soy longx haic> [I read
PRDG-ASP this Clf book be-cood very]
```

'This book that I'm readinc is very good' ("This [I'n
reading it] book is very good")
Cf. Thai na_s thi pbom kamlang aan nii dii maak
'id.'.
(2) head_of PC_=_oniect
<yia hawọ [ninh tsawav mufnyei nyaanh] wuex tah mienh>
iI $h i t$ he take I-POSS money that Clf personj
'1 hit the ferson who took my money' ("I hit the fhe took my money] person")

Cf. Thai phom tii khon thii aw _n kh_y Rhor Ray (isd.)".
(3) head_of_RS_=_outer locative
<iyia yiem tonc soul whay nawn Eyauv hio haic> i beat read book that Cif house be-bic very

The house that I stucy in is very bige p"The [l-be-there-study) mouse is very big")

Cf. Thai, which prefers to turn this h_-rian kh_gham yay mak, "My study room is very big'.
(4) tead_of_RC_=_inner locstive

〈\{yia an nyaant wuev nawm kapy faix haic> i put money that clf box be-small very
'The box that I put the money in is verv small" ("The [l put money [in it]l is very smallw]
(5) heasd_of_EC_=-instrumertal
<tawh \{yia liongc) katv awv] wuag tsung dzugc> Bring 1 use cut meat that cif knife
'Bring me the knife l used to cut the meat' (abring the
[] (used it) cut meat] knife to me")

Cf. Thai miit thii phom (chay) tat oua maa hay ohon ( ${ }^{(i d .)}$.
(6) tead_of_RC_=_nivet of_riyotal_construction
< y ia paancc tsuav yial wuay tauh mienh tonc mictaq> I depend-on (him) wait me that CIf person late NEW-SIT IRPEV ASP
("gn marks the soot from which the pivot has been deleted.)
"The person that 1 depend on to wait for me is late" ("The [I depend-on him to wait-for-mel person be-late now:

Cf. Thai khon thii phom kh_-y mapa rap phom saay siag I_w The person that 1 ?m waiting for to come and dick me up is late."
(7) head_of_EC_-nossessive
<[yie bawav ninhfnyei aaO-dzyaauctioic] wuay tauh mienh> I hit he-POSS Dlay-companion that CIT person no NEW-SIT-IRREV
"The persor whose friend l hit left" ("The II hit his friendl Eerson left*)

Cf. Thai khon thii phom til phuan khaw gaak pay l_w '(id.)'.
(8) head_of_RC_=chject_of_a_comparative_Rerticle
<lyia kauh hlanạl wiav tauh mienh ming̣h micfaa> I more tall [than him] that CIf person ge NEW-SIT-IRREVASP
"The person that I'm taller than left" ("The II'm taller than himl person left")

Cf. Thai khen thii phom sum kwal khaw caak pay 1--w (id.)'.

```
(9) heac_of_EC_=_chiect_of_v ,_of_serial_verk_construction
    IgQal_of_y_cf_metion_in_"v_of_metion_+_Rurrese_clause"
    constructicn
```

    <lyia minoh reaiz lail wuav nawin he yiem ko nyei>l do
    buy vegetahie that clf market be-at be-far
    The market 1 go to to buy groceries is far away AS-
    SERT' ("The [I oc [there] to-buy vegetables] market is
    far away"
    Cf. Thai taieat ajii phom eay suy phak nan (man) kizy
    makk '(id.)'。
    (10) head_of_RC_=_otiect_ef_Y,_of_secial_yerb_constriuction
direct_object of $V$ of purpose_clause_in_"motion_verb_+
purpose_clause_construction"
<[yia mingh he maaiz] wuly tsung dzucs iengx haic> I go
buy market ruy that CIf knife good very
The knife I went to the market to buy is very good"
("The [l go to-market to-bryyl knife is very good";
Cf. Thai (?)miil thii phon Ray talaaf sul nan (man) dif
mazk.[20] '(id.)".
[20] This Thai sentence which is analogous to the Mien is questionable at best. Thais would want to turn it in some way, probably to prevent anythinc from intervening between the $V$ of motion and the purpose VP:

It should be noted that all the ahove RC's were of the $W R C$ + [hen + Clf $+N$ m patterng and that all the head nouns were definite. Further investination is needed to see how versetile the cther kinds of RC's are in terms of access to heads cf different ranks and whether it makes any difference if the head noun is indefinite.
(11) head_of_RC_三_subject_of_Rratasis_of_sentefcemith_resuia tative complement\{21\} <ninh [jhaaux yia tuav $I$ piaqc hnyiouvy Res-Comp Res3 uay taut finc-saengh> He teach me be-able that Conp Clf teachs:
-He is the teacher who fteaches/can teachl tre so that 1 understand" (whe is the [teach me be-abler toresult in me] understandingl teacher*)
thus, miit thii nhom pay suy thii talaat (nan: (man) dif mabk. "The knife that 1 went to buy at the market is very good," but this does not alter the fact that Thai, like Mien. is relativizing onto the object of a "V1 V2" series.
[21] The normal practice in this dissertation where translating Mien forms is tn use square orackets to enclose material not present in the original, but which needs to be mentally supplied to render the sense of the original. Since, however, in the present section we have used souare brackets to enclose relative clauses, we have specially labelled with wa." those square brackets which are being used in their normai function, namely, to enclose words which have to be rentally sunplier.

## Cf. Thai khaw pen khruy thif s_n phor day khaw-cay (ide)'。

(12) head of RC = obiect ot orotasis of sentence with_resultetive_comciement
<ninh tyia jhaaux lninh) tuav Iraqe hnyiouvl Res-Comp uav tauh fing-saenoh> he l teach hin be-able enter heart that clf student

- ine is the student who understands when I teach hint (NHe is the $I I$ teach (him) be-able $\{$ sc. toresult in hims understandinal student*) SC.

Cf. Thai khaw Ren nak-rian thii phom s_-n day khaweciy (idei'.
2.3 .5 Structure of guestionse He have identified three kinds of questions: (1) "yes/now-questions, (2) alternative cuestionss añd (3) "whweword questionse
2.3.51 wYesfno guestions. This tyde of question in Hmong and some other mainland Southeast Asian languages fnot including áusircisesinni as well as in cininese was discussed in a recent paper by Clark (1985) who set up a typology, whose categories we will mention when they are represented in pien. He wili start firon the simpie sentence kionga ryei> "(Scmethingf-body) is çood."

```
Fattern (1): The statement with a "yes/now-question inig-
    nationiz2] on the last word <long nyei?> vIs
    it good?'.
```

Pattern (2): The statement with final question particie <sea> and yyes/nor-question intonation on <saa>: <lonox nvei $[1] s a a ?>$ 'ls it qood?".

Pattern (3): The statement with alternate question particie <fai>, with a hiah level or hion rising intonation on <fai>: <longx nyei $\{$ llfaiv?> 'Is it good?'.

Pヨttern (4): The statement followed by the neaative particie <mv> olus a repetition of the verb (the intonation of the final verb requires further study): <lonrx mu longx> ils it aood?". This is a pattern which occurs in Hmong, Mandarin (where it is the predominant pattern) and sore Tibeto-Burman (Clark 1985:62\}. In Mien this pattern and the following one are not
[22] As we stated in the Phonoloay section, Mien has different intonations which interact in indiyidual ways with each lexical tone. Purnell 1968:31-34 has quite a detailed discussion of intenation, but since 1 cou?d not exactiy replicate his results, nor get quite consistent material from my informants, I have ieft a fuil treatment or the inconarion of cuestions, and intonation in seneral, as a task for the future. I have fron Flace to place simply indicated in phonetic brackets the pitch patteras secorded for those particular forms.


#### Abstract

very solite. ${ }^{\prime} n$ pattern (4) if the verb has an object this comes before the neative Darticle: thus for ${ }^{2}$ oid he eat?' we have <nyanc hnaangx miv nyanc?) ("Eat rice not eat?") not =<nyanc mv nyanc hnaangx> ("Eat not eat rice?").


Pattern (5): The statement followed by the alternative question particle <fai> plus the negative particle <mv> oius a repetition of the verb lthe intonation of the final verb acain requires further study): <longx nyei fai mv longx>. This pattern occurs in Mandaring Thai, Lao, Vietnamese, Khmer, Hmong (where it is the predominant patterni and some TibetoEurman languages (Clark op. cit.).

Pattern (6): The statement, followed by <tseiz nyei?> (yes/no question intonation on <nyei), functioning as a tao: <lonqx, tseiz nyei?> 'It's richt, isn't it?'. This corresponds to a Thai question ending in chay_meys

Pattern (7): This is not a plain "yes/no"-question, but a umeta-question", "You mean good?", "Are you talking about the subject of being good?": fror the statement <longx nyei> the assertive


#### Abstract

particle <nyei> is omitted, and an intonation, which needs further investigation but always seems tc involve some kind of rise, is used on the last word of the remainder: this <lonax?>. This nattern occurs in Mandarin. The closed semantic analoc̣ue in thai is the statement followed by alternative auestion particle ㄷㅛㅛㅛㅡㄹ


2.3.52 Alternative_questions: $1 n$ fact patterns (3)-(5) of Section 2.3.5.1 are alternative questions, when the alternatives are "to VP" or "nct to vpa where the vpos are identical. Pattern (4) of Section 2.3.5.1 omitted the alternative-question particle <fai> but we only found this farticle te be omissitle in exactly that patterng i.e., when the negative of the $V P$ is being offered as the alternative. There are some other patterns:

question.

Pattern (2): This is a dattern (1) with the particle <aeq> (of uncertain function here) added after the first alternative, and optionally added after the second alternative (the intonation of the last. word of the second alternative again neering further study). Examples:
(i) onitting <aec> after the second alternative <naiv jhuv fai aeq $\left\{\right.$ IImaaz? ${ }^{\text {I }}$ Is this a fog or a horse' (the lexical tone of <maaz> 'horse', <-z> is a low risingfalling).
(ii) with <aeq> after both alternatives: <haiv im nyei fai aeq kaam nyei [ I? ae> 'Is this bitter or sweet" Presumably the dropping of the glottal stop of the finel <aeq> and the assumption by this particle of a nid falling pitch about the same as the lexical lower-mid falling tone, $\langle-h\rangle$, are matters of intonationl.
 cyestion_wordss indefinite_pronouns_and_indefinise_relarive pronounse "hhw-ouestions are question containino interrogative words equivalent to English (a) 'who?', (b) "what?',
 shares the areai feature thar its "wall words do tifiple
duty：（1）as interrocative words in whoword questions，i2l as indefinite pronouns meanino，correspondingly：（al vany－ tody＇，（b）＇anything＇s（c）＇at any time＇（d）＇in any place＇， （e）Bfor any reason＇，end（f）in eny way，and（3）as inde－ finite relative pronouns meaning，correspondingly，（a）who－ ever＇，（b）＂whichever＇，（c）＇whenever＇，（d）＇wherever＇，（e） －for whatever reason＇，and（f）in whatever wayp．［23］The forms involve either the bound form＜haivf＞or the free form ＜haix＞．The form of kroadest use is＜hamp＞followed by the classifier（see Section 2.4 .2$)$ appropriate to its referent： thus＂rho？＂is＜haivftauh＞。＂what？＂is＜haivfnyunce＞， ＇when？＂is＜haiv－tsanc＞referring to future time and ＜tsyang0－haix＞refering to dast time：＂where？＂is＜haivf dzu〉 or 〈haix＞．＂why？＂is＜weic haiv－tiuc＞（wbecause of what reason？w），＜weic haix＞，or＜tsoux haiv－nyunac＞（wto－do what？＂）：how？is＜hnangu haivfnaw＞，（wlike what－way？m； ty particles in positive sentences at any rateg in an indefinite meaning is an areal feature，reaching in Asia as far as japanese：e．c．g in Thai khray＋k＿，Lanu a－sy + ka．，Mandarin shei + doy or shei 4 ze，Japanese Eaㅡㄷ + mo 11 am indebted to J．A．Matisoff D．c．for the Lahu，Mandarin and Japanese examolesl．The fifi dic－ ture includes functioning as indefinite relative pros nouns，and，indeed，interromatives used as indefinite pronounss and indefinite relative pronouns crop up in indo－European as well：e．oo．French guoi gu＇il en soif －However it mey be＇，colloquial German ich will was Essen II want to eat scmethinq＂．Sometimes in Indo－ Eurcpean languages the indefinitizing particle is free， as auch in German was es auch sein mas Thatever it right he，sometimes it is bound as are－ever in En－ clísh，cumaye in latin．
-how Adj?" is <Congc haix Arij> ("to what extent de-adj?n). ?opre is even an emphatic form <feio-nyunoc> meaning 'what/whyfhow on earth?'. Fach of these forms can in the apfropriate construction take on its corresponding indefinite or indefinite relative meanina. The simplest construction is that of the whn-questicn pattern, which simoly involves the substitution of the question-word in the sane rlace as the corresconding noun or adverb would stand, anj using at the same time a special "wh"-question irtonation on thp last word of the question. The "wh"-words may be reduplicated to oive o plural meaning. Examples:
(i) Questinn: <minch haivfl Ildau> where did you go?"
(ii) Question: <mingh haivfdauthaivt [1] dau> vhat places did you go?'
(iii) Indefinite: <mv tuav mingh haivfdau> 'I didn't go anywnere".
(iv) Guestinn: <maaic haivfyungefheivfnyunge kaqvI IInaiv?> 'What thincs did you buy?"
(v) Question: <sipv haivftauh I IImienv?> What spirit did [you] appease?"
(vi) Indefinite relative: <haivftauh mienv yaac khoi sip nyei> (L 141) Whatever soirits there were we

| (vii) | Guestion: <hmwancy mv dzyaauc tsoux haivt |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | [ I]nyungc? (12 302) 'What's the hurry that you |
|  | can't visit a while? ${ }^{\text {chene-in-a-hurry }}$ landi not |
|  | visit do what?w |
| (viii) | Question: <feio-nyunac tsoux?> (L 197) What on |
|  | earth can be done about it?' (What-on-earth do?*) |
| (ix) | Indefinite: <rv haity feid-ryunge tsoux> (L 197) |
|  | "There's mothing on earth to be done about it" |
|  | ("Not can anything-whatsoever do.") |
| $(x)$ | Question: <cix lonac haiv-[ l]nyungc? V Hhat do |
|  | you wart?* |
| (xi) | Indefinite relative: <haiv-nyungc yaac tuav> |
|  | Whatever it may be will do: anything will do." |
|  | ("whatever also can.") |
| (xii) | Questien: <donge haix hlaang?> How high is it?" ("Be as-much-as where be-tall?") |
| (xiii) | Indefinite: <meiv doncc haix hlaangx> 'It's not |
|  | especially tall ${ }^{\text {wnct }}$ be-as-much-as anywhers |
|  | tall") |

2.4. Ihe_werc: parts_sf_speache A sentence is a free form of a certain level, while the lowest ievel of free forms are what we call words. Hords in Mien can be simple or sompound isee Section 3.3 for compound nouns and Section 4.5 .5 for compound verbsl. it is traditional and helpful in arammar to divide them into parts of speech or aformclasses," and we tave found it convenient in analyzing mien to set up the following parts of speech.
(1) Numerals (Num). These are defined by listing, and can be found listed and analyzer at Section 3.4.1. They inciude the numbers $1 \mathbf{- 9}$, multiolicative and additive constructions invciving these, and also include by virtue of syntactic and semantic analoov, the mien words for "many", 'several', 'how many', 'a single; only one', and 'half'.
(2) Classifiers (Clf). These might also be called "numerary adjuncts". They occur only and always after, and in constituency with, numerals, except that the numeral 'one' nay be omitted, to make up quantitv-expressions (0) (see Section 3.4.2, and Section 3.11).
(3) Nouns (N). Autonomous ncuns (N) are those words which may occur all by themselves after and in consistency with a quantity-expression (Num + Clf). There are also non-autonomous, or 'limited' nouns of variaus types, which when combined with other nominal morphemes of appropriate
type, form 'second-order autonomous nouns' which may then occur in the frame "Num $+\mathrm{Cl}^{f}-\boldsymbol{- w}$. The ouantity-expression itself nay be reoarded as a 'second-order autonomous noun'.
(4) Verbs (V). Verbs are words which must be precedable by the nerative adverb <maiv> - <mv>, i.e.e, they nust te neqatable.
(5) Adverts (Adv). Hores stand next to and madify verbs.
(6) Conjunctions (Conj). Kords that occur first in the ir clause or else immediately before the VP, but in any case they stand in constituency with the clause as a whole, except that scretimes as a result of conjunction reduction they may in surface structure stand in constituency with co-ordinare NP's or VF's.
(7) Particles (Prt). These are words, usually small in pnonological bulk, that do nnt fit any other of the part-cf-speech catecories. They follow the item with which they stand in constituency. Sentence particles (Prt) follow sentences; topic particles (Prt 1 follow topics: nounDhrase particles (Prt ${ }_{N P}$ ' follow noun phrases: and verbphrase particles $\{P r t$ f follow verb phrases.
(8) Interjections (Inti). These are exclamations that do not fall under the other part of speech categories, or
constructions of these. They may constitute utterances in themselves, or irtrude intc utterances. They are marked by speciai features of vowel-lenath, intonation and voicequality.
2.4.1 Morghology of the parts_of speech. Mien is an uninflected lancuage, and the morpholody of the oarts of soeech, such as it is, is restricted to the noun and the verb, and will be deait with in Chapters ili and ive We shnuld note however that there are in Mien sporadic apparent remains of a certain amount of derivational mornhology. These wili be discussed in the following section.

### 2.4.11 Apearent fossil_remains_of_derivational_mor=

 chclocy:_allofams. The word "allofams" was coined by Matisoff to refer to sets of words that make up so-called wordfamilies", i.e.g they bear to each other a family resenblance in terms of form and function without the existence of that degree of regularity which allows words in other languages to be arranged in paradigms and divided, more or less cleanly, into roots of ciear neaning and derivational or infiexional morphemes of clear meaninc.Allofams look like the debris from the long-past breakdown of such a rlear system. Co-allofans often belong to different parts of speech. The picture is complicated in Mien by the fact that so much of the vocabulary is borrowed
from various sirita of chinese, so that candidates for coallofany may reffect (a) a merphological situation of the older Mien of pre-Chiriese cortact times, or (b) a Chinese word-fanily berrnwed inte Mien holus-bolus: or (c) etymological doutlets -- different Chinese donor dialects giving one and the same word at different times with possible senantic specialization. $\mathfrak{l e}$ : us diserss this last case first.
2.4.111 Fien_doutlets fromone_ang_the_same Chinese korde A case of this is provided, for instance, by the variants [khawvfiient:](khawvfiient:) (L 140) and <khawvflinh> (L 355) both meaning 'to pity, feel sorry for" (< Ch. (AD \#\& 14 \# \#556.E) ) of which the first is the popular torm, and shows tone= sandhi, while the second is the song-language form, which fact in itself, alond with the vocalism of the second syltable, indicates that it is a pre-modern loan; another example is <san> 'three', $i<C h . ~(A D \# 766) \%$ of restricted usaçe, as in <lauv san>, a name for a third snn, whose initial and final indicate a medern loan (< S.W. Mandarin), and <faam> 'three' used in various connections including <m0faam> the name cften given to a third daughter (for more on this pair of doublets, see Section 3.4.1.3.2.5), the initial and final of <faam> indicating a pre-modern loan.

Yet ancther example is provided by the chinese (AD \#lifi, wifich has yielded 〈uic> (L 9), whose form marks
it as a pre-modern loan, and 〈hweix> (L 300》, whose tone, if nothing else, marks it as a motern loan: both forms mean ${ }^{\text {eto }}$ reet' (see further on these forms at Section 2.4 .2 .1 below). in scme cases Mien has seemingly imposed its own allofany on a Chinese etumen borrowed only once -- e.g.e Chinese (AD \#609.1) has as its reqular[24] correspondent in mien <khoi> (L 141) a transitive verb meaning 'to oden', but alonaside enis there exists <coi> (L 148) to open; to opened; be away, be separated which can even form a resultative complement constructicn with its doublet, thus ekhoi ru gois "cannct get it coen" (ropening litl doesn't [result-in-its-] being-oden") (see Downer 1973:15-16), as if one could say $(A D$ \#609.11, $\# 37, \# 609.11$ in in Chinese.

Voicing in initial stops goes back to earlier Aprenasalization, and that must have been still a productive process at the time when (AD $\# 609.11$ ) was borrowed. The Toss of the faspiration in the taspirated stop and its merger with the $=p l a i n$ voiceless stop is regular (see Downer 1973:9-10), and the same opposition is to be found in the pair <thutv> (L IE2) ito take off; to remove; to sedarate from; te recover from' (< Ch. (AD \#1138.1)) and <dutv)
[24] It should be understcod that "requiar" is a somenhat provisienal term here, since borrouing from different Chinese dialects has produced a complicated picture of sound-correspondence that has not yet been fully worker out. (See Downer 1973).
(L 91) 'to come off, come away, be sedarated from', which is rerecisely parallel to <kroi/goi> and can form resuifative complement constructions: e.g., <thutv mv dutv> pcannot be removed'. So far we have dealt with two cases of *prenasalization added to an zaspirated initial to yield intransitive verbs or adjectives.

Now let us take a case where fprenasalization has precisely the opposite semantic effect: from the adjecifve <peengh> (L l9) 'to be level' (AD \#743) (with tvoiced initiall, tprenasalization has yielded 〈baenọh (ll 48) ito nake level, smooth; to te equal in level to'. Slightly different is the case of <tonah> (L 72) to be alike, to be the sane es', a regular reflex of Chinese (AD \#1150), with a Froiced initial and fa-tone which seems to have resorted co both \#prenasalization and \#tone-change to produce <dongc> (L 91) 'to be the same as, to he as much as".

It is hard to say whether it is different dialects-oforigin or Dost-borrowing allofamy that accounts for the coubletization of Chinese (AD \#1015.5) inte <tauh> iL 65), c.1f for peopieg animals and deors, and 〈tasuh> \{L 63) 'first, foremost, scurce, beginning's and of Chinese (AD $\$ 1194$ ) into the regular <tsien> (L151) vo be trues senuine' and <tshien> iL 173, taspiration < i?ij vicemip to be kin to'.
 cuestion of whether they are Chinese loans or not，we offer the followinc exameles of possible allofans：
（i）〈ywang＞（L 316）ito revitalize＂and＜ywangn＞ （L 316）＇to be viogoros，virile，fertile＇（which reflect an alternation in fa－tone between ＊alottal－step initial and a＊voiced－semivowel ini－ tial）。
（ii）＜sia＞（L 208）＇to waive，overlook＇s and＜siav＞ （L 208）＇to give up；relinquish＇，〈siex＞（L 208） ＇to forcive；bear with ${ }^{\text {c }}$ ，all with the common se－ mantic element of forbearance，and reflecting alternation between $\# A-, * B-$ and $* C-t o n e s$,
（iii）＜pwei＞（L 30）vo tean one＇s back up against some－ thing＇g 〈pweix＞il 30）＇to lie sown，recline＂and ＜pweic＞（L 30）ito lean against something（of peo－ ple）（reflectinc an alternation between＊woice－ less initial－cum－キA－tone，$=$ voiceless initial－cun－ \＃C－tone，and froiced initial－cum－+ C－tonel，
（iv）＜tapv＞（1 66）＇to put into：inserte and＜tape＞ （L 66）＇to co into deeply，to penetrate＇（reflect－ ing a phonological opposition of twoice！ess ini－ tial versus fooiced initial，and a semantic odpo－
sition of transitive action versus intransitive result reminiscent of <khoi/ooi> and <thutv/dutv> above),
 (L 178) 'to crush; stifle, repress las anger) (reflectinc a chonoiggical npposition ef tuoiceless initial versus faspirated initial, and a semantic relationship of more ceneral to more particular action),
(vi) <sench> (L 211) 'te shim, place underneath" and <senoc> (L 211, 359) to be located under, supporting the weight of (reflectinc an opposition between *voiced initial-cum- $=\mathrm{A}-\mathrm{tone}$ and *roiced initial-cum-* $C$-tonel,
(vii) 〈bweix> (L 56) 'tc boife and 〈pyuix> il 35; 'to bubble over", reflecting an opposition between Aprenasalized-voiceless initial-cum-bilabial-mediel-pius-diphthongal-rhyme versus tolain voiceiess initial-cum-falatal medial cum-another-kint-of-dipfthongal-rhyme;
(viii) <phiuv> (L 35) 'tc spray out of the mouth' and <phyuqu> ifidem!': reflectino an opposition between a *vocalic (*voiced velar obstruent (?))
inc．
（ix）＜dawn＞（L 92）＇to be damp；to be wet＇and 〈fawtc＞ （1 92）＇to be soakinc wet＇，reflecting an nodosi－ tion between a tnasal final and a thomorganic step final，
（x）（winge＞（L 303）＇to gn around，detour aroundf and ＜hwing＞（L 300）＇to walk around，to encircle＇，re－ flecting an opposition between a livoiced semivowel initial－cum－＊C－tone and an＊aspirated－ semivowel initial－cum－＊A－tone．

An intriguing pair is＜seu＞（L 211）＇to be everis straiaht＇and＜seux＞（L 2iil＇to be uneven，off－center＇，rẹ－ flecting an oppesition of $\boldsymbol{\sim} \neq$－tone and $=c-t o n e$ ．Or consider ＜pienv＞（L 13）＇to pass［something］off onto another：to evade onf＇s responsinilicy ty shunting it off onto someone else＂and＜phien＞（L 36）＇to be out of the appropriate Flace，off－certer＇．Sometimes one of the pair is a verb while the other is a noun，e．g．，＜pouh）（L 20）to serveg wait on＇and＜pou＞（L 20）＇a servant＇；＜byaac＞（L 57）to walk with a stien＇and＜pyaav＞（L 34）＇a stick＂，＜leuh＞ （L 286）＇tc form a gap＇and 〈leuc）（L 286）＇a gap，opening＇． Or the opposition may be between a noung as 〈gwaah＞（L 149） ＇branches＇，and＜c̣waav＞（l 149）Cif for branches．

These seem to point rack，as serving some derivation－ morpholsgical function in earlier times，to alternations tetween（i）tun－prenasalized and キoprenasalized initials \｛＜khoi／ooi＞，＜thutv／dutv＞\}, (ii) \#voiceless and tvoiced initials（〈pou／pouh＞，〈tapv／tapc〉），（iii）＊voiceless and＊as－ rirated initials（＜tsatv／tshatv＞），（iv）homorganic＊nasal and \＃stop finals（dawn／dawte），（v）various＊tones （＜ieuh／leuc＞，＜sia／siav／siex＞），and（vi）combinations of ＊segmental and Ftonal alternations（＜pyaavibyaac〉， ＜phien／pienv＞，＜tonrh／donac＞）．Perhaps a thorouach investi－ gation could reveal some recularities here．

2．4．2 Overlaroing＿parts＿of speeche Possibly the finit－ ing case of allcfamy is multiple part－of－speech membership， where one and the same form，with no variaticn whatevers may telonc to different narts of speech．
？a！Verb／noung Usually what is involved is a word designatinc either an action，as a verb，or the product，in－ strument or locus of the action，as noun：e．g．，＜pyonmh＞ （L 35）＂to perch，roost＂and＂a perch，roost＂，〈ywefc＞ （L 316）＂té sectete gumisad／juice＂and＂gum／sad juice？． ＜tsiem＞ 12 151）＂to wedge＇and＂a wedge＂，〈khadv＞IL 137） －te cover tightly；to close las a box with a lid and a lackje and＇sasket，trink；container lfor persona？be？ong－ ings）f．＜tshengx＞ $\operatorname{lL}$ 181）＂to cross－stitch＂and eross－
stitching (the product)', <daam> (L 89) 'to carry on the shoulder" and "a load carried on the shoulder".

This last word is probably an example of a widespread and probably productive process whereby, as in Chinese lchao 19te:317 eI seg.) a vert can becet a "cognate" or "inner" sbiest whict functions as its Verb-cif lsee Section 3.4.2.1.2). Thus from 〈digu> vo kick one can derive
 kicks'. If the verb is Iransifiye the coonate object nay be reaarded as ciassifying or measuring the object noun rather than the verb, e.ç., <daam i daam kaqc-naiv> "to carry-on-the-shoulder two shoulderloads [of] things*: or <phwangy siac phwangr hreivy wto scoop-up-in-cupped-hands seven double-handfuls [cf] uncooked-hulled-rice".

The end of this evalution is the emergence of a fullfledned autonomous noun, romophonous with its semanticaity kindred parent vert, i.e., a noun which is not limited to beinc a coanate object, tied to a context in which its parent verb is ocverning it. He have a kind of half-way house situation exemplified in the sentence <naanax jhienv tscux daam daam (L 259) ito attach [thinoss together to make a load to carry on the shoulders" ("attach-tooether EHR-RES-MSP make shouldor-load cartyoon-shouldersm! in which <daam> "shoulder load" is an ordinary liee., "outer",
ron-coanate) cbject of 〈tscux> "to make' and yet it is still +lanked by its parent-varb in a pseudo-divotal construction.[25] in cther words the "rseudo-divotai" construction could well te the stepping-stone whereby the homophonous cognate object of a verb becmes a syntactically independent, i.e., autnnmous noun.
(b) Yerb<numerale Another case of overlapping Darts of speech is provided bv the verbs <tshamv> (L 153) ito be comrleter, which as numerals, i.e.g preceding a classifier, mean "nany" and 'the whole" respectively for the latter case see first note to the tatle in Section 3.4.1.1 belon!.
2.4.21 חyerlappinc_nafts_nf_speech_ameno_Chinese_1ean= words. Much investigation remains to be done in the area of Chinese loanworis so let us just note briefly two situatinns: (1) the multiple fart-of-speech membership is borrowed as such from Chinese: e.a.g 〈uic> (L 9) to meet together' and 'a reeting" (Chinese (AD \#112)) 'fidem:'; (26) (2) Mien has imposed additional part-of-speech membership on the word after borrowing it from Chinese: egeg <jhien> (L 960) "tn rule; to exercise authoritv" and "a ruler; an
[25] Cf. the anolooous sentence with allofamy, not homophony between verb and nount <mv maeih pou douh ninh) (L 20) There is no servant to wait on him'.
i2ól inis is a piemodern toan; the same yorb-noun overlap seems to te present in its modern-loan doublet <hweix> (L 300).

```
cfficial', of whict two rart-of-sDeech meaninas the Chinese
original, (AD \#447), seems to have only the iatter.
```

2.4.3 Hemmymys To be distinouished from (cojallofams, which show a family resemblance in meaning and form, and over?epping parts of speech or part-of-speech subcatedories, which show a family resemblance of meaning and identity cf form, we have hamonyms, which show identity of form and no semantic relationship at all. Like most (all (?)) languages, Mien has its share of homonyms, thouch they are the exception, rather than as in, for instance, yandarin, the rule: e.g.,

(iii) <thawnọv (1) (L 83) 'soup; broth; water in which vegetables were boiled' and (2) (L 83) 'to hinder, obstruct, get in the way, obviate',
(iv) <dia> (1) 11 85j "medicine', (2) il 85) 'cloth',


Chifler III

## the noun fhrase

3.2. Ihe_general stricture of tine_Noyn_Phrase_INPLe In this account of the NP we follcw the principle of expository convenience and informal eclecticism rather than a strictly formal, deductive presentation. Thus a distinction is semetimes drawn be iween deep structure and surface structure, and sometimes nots sometimes ine account is tormalized and sometimes not. For the sake of lucidity of presentation we shall begin with a simplifiec acccunt of the NP, and give a more technical presentation at the end of the chapter (Section 3.11). Dur siaplified acccunt is as foilows:

$$
N P--\rangle\{D \in t\} \text { (Det) }
$$

A NP consists of an optional Determiner Structure followed by an obligatory noun ( $N$ ) -- the NP-nucleus, followed by an optional Determiner-Structure

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { E.g.s < [ Det naiv nawm det tshia luet uav nyungcl vet } \\
& \text { This vehicle of that } k \text { ind }
\end{aligned}
$$


#### Abstract

Without more ado we shali now proceed tc the heart of the NP, its nucleus.


3.2. Aytengmous_nosins. A \{first-order\} autonomous noun ( $N$ ) is a free form which may constitute a NP (nucleus) all by itself. Subtypes of autonomous nouns incluce (a) common nouns, (b) proper names of piace, (c) proper names of person, (d) personal pronouns, (e) demenstratives and (f) interrogative/indefinite proncuns.

The term and concept "autononous ncun" is taken from Matisotf 1973:Sec. 3.2. It is, as he pcints out, a surface structure phenomenon, but it is convenient to use it in descriting mien as well as Lahu. It is a surface structure phenomenon in several respects: (a) it cisregards the question of whether an "autonomous ncun" stands alone in the NP also in the deep structure, as is arguatle with Demonstratives, or as the result of a deletion transformation; (b) interrogative "pronouns" are complex in structure and may have undergone deletion of a head-noln: e.g.o <haivftauh> 'who' has the surface structure ( $\mathrm{A}^{\prime}$ :
(A)

but it probabiy has the underlying structure (B) isee figure $3(x 1)$ in Section 3.11).
(B)


In its journey from (E) to (A) 〈haivftach> would have undergone 〈yietc>-deletion and head-noun deletion.

A limited noun ( $N$ J may not constitute a NP nucleus, 1 im but is nevertheless semanticaily noun-like. These include specific-location nouns, numerals and classifiers. Taking autcnomous founs and classifiers to be subcategories of nouns, we should note that there can be gyerlapping between
subcalegories of goun：e．g．g＜chiax＞（l 107）as an auto－ nomous noun meaning＇breath，life prirciple；voice；air， steam，sas：manner，temper，demeanor＇，and as a clf for breaths iaken，and＜pcuv＞（L 20），as an autonomous noun meaning＂ax；natchet＇and as a Clf for strokes of an axe．

3．2．1 Common＿nounse As with presumably most languages， most nouns belong to this class．They may occur in the
 expressions，and also as heads of sibcrdinative construc－ tions with＜nyei＞which is the suboroinate－cum－possessive particle．（See Section 3．7）．Morphciogically they range from monomorphemic tc higher－orcer compound nouns：e．g． ＜mienh＞＇person＇in＜i tauk mienth＇twe people＇（＂two clas－ sifier person＂），〈pyauv＞＇house＇in＜Fuqv－Awn nyei pyauv＞ ＇Fou－One＇s house＇．An example ct a cerron noun which is a higher－order compound is＜jhiem三puaz－docy＝dzaeng＞I11（L 95） ＂a gold ring＂（＂gold三hand－extremity（i．e．．＂finger＂）＝ring＂）．
3.2 .2 2coper＿nouns．place－names tcgether with personal names make up the category of proper ncuns in mien．Proper nouns are distinguisned from commen nouns by the fact tiat they cannct appear as head of quantified NP＇s，and as head of subordinative constructions with＜nyei＞．They are dis－

[^7]tinguished from pronouns in not being atle to be follcwed by appositive NP's lor at least not in the same way: the question needs further investigationl. Furthermore, if pronouns are introduced not by PS-rules, as here, but by a erongmi= nalization transformation, and proper ncuns are introduced by phrase structure rules, and this ditterence of origins has empirical import, then we have another syntackic difference.

Proper names can be divided en syntactic grounds isee Rule (9)(iii) and (iv)) and semantic grounds into proper names of person and proper names cf place. Fersonal names share with pronouns the fact that they can be pluralized, or rather, collectivized, by the addition of a special morpherre, <bua>:[2] e.g., <kweih tszci bua> (L 53) 'Gway Dzoy's group']. The Mien personal naming system is quite intricateg involving clan names, generation names, adult given names, childhood names and nicknares. Examples of childhocd names are given in Section 3.4.1.3.2.5. The personal naming system is discussed in detail in Lombard (329-333). Personai names can also be pressed intc service as placeonames (see next paragraph).

[^8]As for proper names of place, these like common nouns referring to some particular place, are normally accompanied by spatial co-deictics (see Secticn 3.11 PS-rules (l)(iii): (iv) or (v)-(2)(iii)--(9), and Section 3.2.5), and in fact these accompaniments have the power to turn personal names intc place names (see Section 3.2.5).
3.2 .3 interrggativeRindefinite_proncunse it is convenient tc treat these as akind of ncun because they can fill the subject, object and oblicue spcts in the sentence: (for a more precise grammatical characterization see footnote in Section 3.2). Some examples are: <haivftauh> "who?/anyone', <haivtnawm 'what?/anything' <haivttsanc> "when?fat any time', <haivfnyunc> 'what kind?fanything, any Kind" <tsouxthaiv-nyungc> 'why?/far any reason'. Tine interrogative meaning is obtained if the sentence containing the word has a content-question intonation or is an indirect li.e. embedded) question. Otherwise the indefinite interpretation applies. In normal speech style the constituent <haiv> is reduced to <hav>. It is a bcund morpheme, and carries the interrogativefindefinite part of the meaning. It is cbviously an allofam of the lacative aoverb <haix> "where?/anywhere'.

[^9]<ņw>, a quasi-classifier (see Section 3.4.2.1.8). The constituent <hnangv> is a particle meaning like'. The constituent 〈tsoux> is a verb meaning 'to do", so that the expression translated $\quad$ why?ffor any reason' is e- or is historically derived from -- a clause meaning itc dc what?/to do anything'; parailels for this are to be found in Thai, Lahu, Cantonese, etc.

In the expression for "what?/anything" the classifier varies according to what kind of referert the speaker has in mind, as do classifiers in quantitative expressions, but probably to a lesser extent than in quantitative expressions. Interrogative/indefinite nouns can be followed by other nouns, to which they are subordinate, e.g., <haivt nyunge tawngx "what kind of place?ノin eny kind of place".
3.2 .4 Ihe_demonstratiyes_Snaiy2_Inis!e_Snaic2_ithat Inear_addresseelfe Suayz_iyonia Lemonstratives may occur as autonomous N's through the application cf PS-rules of Section 3.11: these are Rules (1)(i)--(4)00(5)fi) (in this account of the phenomenon there is no $N$ even in the deep structure, but the rules could be rewritten sc as to provide a $N$ in all cases, which would ther be deleted by a n transformation): e.g.e <naiv haivfnyungc> what is this"
 Jhawn nye: pyauv> 'This is John's hcusef, <naic yia gemh

```
faix haic> 'I don't want that -- it's tcc small" ("Inat I
reject be-small very").
```

Dem's may occur adnominally in prenoninal andfor postnominal position through the operation of Section 3.11 PSRules (1)(ii), (īi), fiv) or (v)-(2)--(3)-(5)--(6). Prenominally Dem occurs in the surfice structure edem it $\langle$ teix>) (+ Num + Clf) + N" (<teix> "someness" is a GroupCif used when $N$ is semantically plurali: e.gen <naiv mienh> 'this person" (Dem + N), <naiv tauh mienh> "this person" (Dem $+\mathrm{Clf}+\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{h}}$ ), <naiv teix mienh> "these people" (Dem + Cif $\quad+N$ ) $\left.\operatorname{group}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{Clf}^{h}+\mathrm{Num}+\mathbf{C l f}+\mathrm{N}\right):$ when followed by Clf of group b
whatever kind <naiv> is commonly reducec to <mv> or <nv>, according to subdialect, and <naic> to 《mh>, according to my informants, and <nc> according to Lombard (254).

Pcst-nominally Dem concludes the $N P$ and is resumptive: e.3., 〈mh tauh auv-kwaav-mienh naic> "that wioow" ("that cif widow that"), where it is right next to the head-noung or <uav nawm mong \{yia tawh mingh laanh tsancl uav> 'that clock that 1 took to the shop to be repaired" ("that Cif clock Il take go shop repairl that") (square brackets enclose kC).

In the body of a narrative <naic> can mean either sthat (near addressee)', or 'the, the aforenentioned". Furthermore the three Demonstratives -- cr corresponding homonymous
adverbs－－have the space－deictic acivertial meanings＇here＇， ＇there（near addressee）＇and＇yoncer＇，respectively．

3．2．5 Spatial co－deicticse These fcllow the demonstra－ tive 〈uav＞，and with it yield the following ceictic expres－ sions：＜uav jhiav＞＇（that）up yonder lot a place above and at some distance from the speaker）；＜uav chaav maengx＞ ＂（that）over yonder on the higher sideg up the filit＂；＜uav maengx＞＇（that there）on that side，on the far side＇；＜uav dau＞＇that $\{p l a c e l$ nearby＇；〈uav caangc＞＂ahead there（at some distance from the speaker），cver there（may be out of sight）：＜uav ngaanc＞＇over yonder（at a medium distance from the speaker and at about the same elevation，the object lying beyond some natural lower area，stch as a river or valiey，but wit？in possible view of the speaker）：＜uav hwaav＞＇over yonder iat a medism oistance and about the same elevation as the speaker，but the object is unable to be seen from his location）＇；＜uav diav uav＞＂dounn yonder there＂；＜uav diav＞＂down yonder（a place foner than and at some distance from the speaker＇s locaticnl＇；＜uav diav haav maengx）＇down yonder side（wnere the trail goes down，levels off，and then rises slightly）＂。

As an example，a mien iiving approximateiy at sea ievei in Richmond，Caiifornias may speak cf geing tc San Francisco Cout of sight，across the San Francisco Eay，approximately
at sea level) in several ways, inclucing <ningh uav hwav Saenffraensisvko (uav)>, or <ningh uav maengx Saent Fraensisvko (uav)>.

This system of spatial deixis seems, by comparison with other languages of the Southeast Asian area, to be ial very highly differentiated, and (b) very nuch insisted upon: thus, for instance, for 'go home" one says <dzuanx uav pyauv) ["return \{tol yonder house, which may be out of sightw) where other languages of the linguistic area would be content with "return house*.

It is also interesting to note that by being incorporated into an expression of spatial ceixis personal names become iocative expressions: e.g., Coningh uav fwaav Kweih Tsoin Lav> "go over yonder to Gway [zcy's place" (L 301) ("go over yonder Gway Dzoy yonder").
3.2.6 Ine_Rersonai_pronounse These can be tabulated as follows:

| yia | *1* | yiałbua | 'ne" |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| mein | 'you (sg.)' | meintbua | 'you (pl.)' |
| ninh | 'refshefit' | ninhtbua | 'they" |


#### Abstract

When unstressed＜meihfbua＞becomes＜mhftua＞and＜ninhtbua＞ beccmes＜nahfbua＞or＜lahfbua＞．〈yiafbua＞alternates in Hsage with simple＜bua＞：my informants deny，and Lombard does not mention，the distinction 〈yiafbua＞＂we（exclusive）＂ versus 〔bua＞＂we（inclusivel＂attributed to Mien by Mao （1972：248）．


3．3．Compound＿nounse What Matisoff says under this heading about Lahs（1973：Sec．3．3）afplits almost withcut change to Mien：

| aly |
| :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

He consider（a）pronouns always tc be separate words，（b） particles to the separate words from their head nouns，（c） numerals to be separate words fror their ciassifiers，and （d）both particles and numerals tc be separate from the head noun at their NP；（e）demonstratives anc spatial co－deictics and prefined lecaticn－ncuns te be indepencent mords：（f） possessor／subordinated NP＇s to be separate from the
subordinative／possessive particle＜nyei＞，which in turn is separate trom the following possessed head NF．All other polysyllabic structures in the AP－－with the exception of the not very numerous polysyllabic morphenes，whatever their origin－－are compound nouns of one sort or another．

As with Lanu，all compound ncuns are autonomous．The vast majority are binary，in the sense that they may be analyzed into two immediate constituents．

While compound nouns shade off intc syntactic construc－ tions in one direction they shade off intc golysyllabic $\quad$ oow inal morphemes in another．These are nct very numerous but there are some quite common ones：e．g．，〈kaqc－naiv＞＇thing＂ （L 121），＜ku0－ngwazz（L 127）＇taby，child＇，《m0－gawngv＞ （L 234）＂head＂．I have hyphenated them as if they were mul－ ticonstituental，following Matisoff（1973：Sec 3．3）．For further discussion regarding problematical cases in the identification of morphemes，see Section 3．3．5．2（c）

## 3．3．1 fgmpound＿orgers＿and＿hyphenizatione A first－order

 compoynd is one whose elements afe bcth single morphemes： ＜tungz－awv＞＇pig meat；pork＇，〈pyauv－hlen＞＇beside the house＇（＂house－environs＂j，＜mweiz－tawngh＞＂honeys（＂bee－ sugar＂＜tawngh＞＜Ch．（AD \＃373．4））．Such compounds are written with a single hyphen between the constituents．A secgnd－order sompound has a first－order compound as one or
#### Abstract

Doth of îs constituents：＜binc＝tweiv－caauv＞•long－tailed monkey＂（＂monkey＝tail－long＂），〈fuaz－dccv＝dzaeng＞＂finger－ ring＂（＂hand－extremity＝ring＂），〈tyauh－yaangh＝tawn＞＂a late－ growing kind of yellow rice＂（＂rice－yellch＝child＂），＜nungh－ tiaxfdau－peih＞13）（L 230＂king of the earth＇twing－ father＝earth－surface＂）．


These compounds are wistien nith a double hyphen $m=a$ between the two major constituents，with single hyphens between the other syllables．Sirilarly，inirg－order som＝ Rounds（i．e．，those having a seccreorder compound as a con－ stituent），are written with a trifle hyphen＂シ＂at the foint where the first cut is to be made，and double and single hyphens where appropriate：＜jhierミpuaz－doqv＝ozaeng＞（L 95） ＂a gold ring＂（＂gold三finger＝ring＂：＜jhiem＞＜Ch． （AD \＃326．1）

For each higher crder we may add a hyphen at the point of primary division：thus＜tom：Cxiaz－tungz＝gaiv三dui＞big heap of wild pig＇s dung＂（＂big三wild－fig＝dung三heap＂，with ＜hiaz＞＜Ch．（AD \＃228），corresponcence froblematical）．

[^10]Doubttul cases can arise: the fierarchy cf constituency may be unclear, compounds may contain unique, difficult-tointerpret syllables, and so on. In these matters we have followed Matiscff's (1973:Sec. 3.3.1) principles of typhenization; i.e.g (a) use single, untierarchized hyphens when the constituent structure is conpletely cbscure: e.g.e <tawl-naw[-nin> (i 74) "jackfruit', except that (b) syllables may be run together in loanwords that are not easity segmented even in the donor language, e.g. <Saent Fraensisvkc>, 'San Francisco'.

It is convenient to subdivide compcund ncuns into those whose immediate constituents are themselves nominal, i.e., noun-ncun compounds, and those which contain a verb as one of their constituents. .
3.3.2 Noyn=noun_compounds_IN=N_erssie These can be conveniently divided into co-ordinate ard hetero-ordinate.
3.3 .21 Cozordinate_N=N_spds.
3.3.211 ARROSitional N=N_ERSSs This is a somewhat dubious category. Some candidates are (hungh-tiax> (L 230) 'king' and <hungh-maac) (L 230) "queen' ("Ithel scvereign[ourl father" and "[the] sovereign-lcur] rother* respec-
 tone problematical, <maac> < Ch. (AD \#592), tone problemati-
call．The problem here is that＜rungt：ccuid also perhaps be interpreted as a modifier anc the second constituent as head，althcugh the relationship is clearly not genitival．

Aiso perhaps beionging under this rutric is a curious kind of compound of the structure＂mienh $+y \pm$ gientm lit． ＂people $V$ people＂）with the general meanirg v－ing kind of people＇：let us baptize them double－mienh sompounds and write an example provisionally tithout hyphensg as fcllews： ＜mienh japv mienh＞＇stingy pecple＇ 1 L 111，237，where ＜japv＞（L 111）means＇to be tight；to finch，to bind；to
 noun compounds almost always show tone sandhe on the first constituent（see Section 3.3 .3 et seq．），while doutremienh compounds never show is between the $v$ ard the final＜mienh＞．

Furthermore the first＜mienh＞coulc well be under TS since its underiying tone，＜－t：＞i．e．，falling：by nature shows no change under $T$ ．This suggests a constituent structure of 〈mienh－japvzmienh＞i．e．，＂tight－person＝person＂． Let us now offer some more examples giving them this consti－ tuent structure：＜mienh－dzweicfitenh＞（L 237） ＇pretty／handsome person＇（＜dzweic）＇pretty，handsome＇）： ＜mienh－kwaifmienh＞＂clever person（＜knai）＇clever＇），〈mientmaaihfmienh＞＇wealthy person（＜maaih＞＇to have＇） which has a synonymous compound 〈putv－tsoih＝mienh＞（＜putv＞

To be afflicted with; to tecme something out of the ordinary'; <tsoih> -- meaning uncertain; iputv tsoih> to be rich"i, 〈mienn-jhomczmienh> "poor person" i<jhomc> epoorel. For a possible explanation of the phenonenon cf dcuble-mienh compounds, see telow.
3.3.212 Additive_Idyandyal_scmpouncss These occur (a) in numerals, in waugend $t$ adcerd" constructions: e.g.s <tsiefc-faam> 'thirteen' (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.2); (b) as combinations of nouns which jointly detine a natural set -let us call them jointiy definitiye bincaes; e.g., <tiaxmaac> (IS optional: "parents' ("father-mother" <Ch. (AD \#1006.1, \#592.7 -- tones of bcth morphemes for some reason shifted from $\# \mathrm{~A}$ to $\# \mathrm{C})$ ), $\langle k a w x-y i c u z\rangle$ 'brcthers" (L 129! ("older brother-younger brotherw: <kanx> (L 129) < Ch. (AD f413), with same change of tone-class as for 〈tiax> and <maac> above:; <yiem0-yaangh> 'the Yin and the Yang' (EyinYang"; <Ch. (AD \#274, \#214.21); <lungh-dau> "the entire cosmos; heaven and earth" ("heaven-earth"); <nyaanh-pyaangh=nyaanh-piouv) (L 271) 'silver jewelry engraved with patterns of flowers and fruits (Esilyer-flowers=silverfruits*).

Jcintly definitive binomes have the property of being Separatie: each part may be severaily mace the object of a verb, withcut the collectivity-meaning of the unseparated
compound teing lost; e.ge, <lanz kawz lawz yiouz〉 'to look for one's brothers' ("look-tor older-brother(s) lcok-for younger-brother(s)").[4] Although separable; the fact that the elements have combined to form a new and unitary entity is shown (a) by the TS which occurs in rost cases, and (D) by the fact inat the compound is treated as a unitary head in quantificational expressions: e.g.e <pyei jhieqv puaztsaux> 'the four (human) extremities; four hands and feet' ("fcur Clf hand-foot").

Sometimes the constituents are polar: if we reter to the constituents as $A$ and $B$ we can cefine the meaning as 'both $A$ and $E^{\prime}$ or 'A, $B$ and everything in between': e.g.e <damm-muanz> (L 92) 'day and night; fron morning till night" ("morning-night"). Another way in whict. additive campounds can be separated is by several redupiication or ine consfituents; e.g." <fun-faqu> ${ }^{\text {des }}$ dendants; grandchildren and great-grandchildren" ("grandchilcren-great grandchildren") $\rightarrow$ <tun-funffaqr-faqv> 'aīl descendants".

[^11]Regarding $T S$ in additive compouncs, see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.1 for the numerals. With unreduplicated binary forms, the leftmost constituent normally undergoes $T S$. Where separate reduplication occurs, there is normally is

3.3.22 Heterg-ordinate_N_E_somRoungse These are more common than co-ordinate $N \neq N$ compourds, and semantically one noun -- let us call it the specifier noun $(N$, -- modifies the other -- let us call it the head noun 6 N ). Ihe direction of modification is net uniform in nominal some Roundss whether the modifier de a noun or a verb (tor the latter see Section 3.3.3). The first constituent normally undergees is whatever the oirection cf modification. The prevalent direction is ${ }^{N}{ }_{S p}-N=$. it is conyenient to discuss the smaller category, ${ }^{S P} N_{n}-N(S F$ compcunds, first.
$3.3 .221 \mathrm{~N}=\mathrm{N}$ _scmpoundse Since these are a minority b $S R$ we can discern some kind of seantic grouping here, viz., animate things - various natural species and aspects thereot: traditionally known ncn-mien ethnic groups, kinds of birds, tishes, snakes and worms, insects, trees and plants, bones, natural fluids: e.g.. 〈jhanx=lawthec> (L 98: 'the Lahu people', <jhanx=aavfkhaah> (L 98) 'the Akha people' - Ef. 〈Iufunient> "the lif people, la mient with N first; <nawqu-go> (L 261) 'cove, pigeon" (wird-

```
dove/pigeon*), <byauz-hleix> (L 57) 'star-fish' ("fish-
star"), <naang-dzung=sim> "pinwcrm" ("worm-pin/needle"),
<kaeng-pyei> 'caterpillar' ("insect-hair"): <pyei> (< Ch.
(AD #721)), with Ftone gone to #clear -- cr *initial gone to
Fvoiceless) (but cf. opposite order in <kul-maeqc-kaeng>
(L 119) 'large, brown, flying beetle" ("corn-insect"J),
<dyangx-kwaa> (L 86) 'papaya tree" ("tree-melon/cucumber":
<kwaa> < Ch. (AD #432)) -- but cf. <somv-dyangx> (L 215) (a
kind ct tree), <byauh=tomh-tshugv> (L 57) 'big-kernel rice"
("rice=big-kernel"), <lai-pyaangh> (L 289) 'cauliflower'
("vegetable-ficwer"), <kwaa-uan> "large water-meTon'
(mmelon-water`), <bunqv-zeib> (L 349) 'ccllar bone" ("bone-
paddle"), <uam-dzuin> (L 11; "saijiva" ("nater-moutin).
```

It should be noted here that the names of the varicus fingers and toes are also "head-tirst" lut the moditiers are not, or at least not positiveiy, nouns. Likenise, the compound names of higher animals are "heac-tirst", but we have not positively identified any of their rocifiers as nominai; there are plenty with verbal nodifiers: e.g., <maz-pen> (L 243) ${ }^{2} z e b r a{ }^{\prime}($ "horse-striped"). Apart frof these natural phenomena we have a handful of otter compounds: e.g.g <pyaur-phaangh) (L 33) 'a house witt a guest plaform" ("house-platform"), <nyaanh-hleax> (L 271) 'salary' ("money-month"), <hungh-tiaxfdau-feih> (L 230) "king of the

'land vehicles' ("vehicle-land": cf. <tcuz-tshia> 'train" ("fire-vehicle".

As regards iS, this normally occurs io the left of -w i.e.s lowest-level juncture. The position to tine left of " $=$ " needs turther checking.

Also deserving of mention here are the iccational NPs consisting of prefix-containing specitic location noun and losated noun, when the prefix-containing specific location noun, which is the $N$, happens to ccre first: e.g., <kanyuaz=lomh) 'in(side) the forest' ("interior forest").[5] Three points are to be noted here: (a) the constituents are reversible, (apparently) without change ct meaning; (b) contrary to the norm in $N-N$ compcunds, the first constituent does not undergo TS: (c) these entities are on the borderline of morphological compounds and syntactic constructions; (d) they can be fused into indubitable ccapounds by fixing the specific-location soun to the ight cf $N$, and dropping its prefix: thus <pyauv kaO-hlen> 'tesice the house' \$no is on $N$ ) $-->$ (pyauv-hlen> "id." (nith TS). See further Sech tion 3.6.
[5] Note that the specific location noun really is the head, i.e., the compound refers to a kinc of inserior, not to a kind of forest. Ic obtain tie meaning 'forest of/in the interior' one wculd have to use the subordinating particle <nyeis: thus ska-nyuaz nyei iomnis.

Further to be noted here are compotnds containing the augrentative form <tomO->. Inis is always preposed and since it is a bound form it is hard to assign it detinitely to a form class: it translates as 'big', e.g., <tomh-byauz> big fish', but it may underlyingly $k e$ noninal -- 'big tining: ct. the timinutivizer <tawn>, as in <byauz-tawn> Vittle fish', where <tawn> also cccurs free as a noun meaning 'child".

We should al so mention again the compouncs <hungh-tiax> 'king', <hungctmaac> 'queen' (see Section 3.3.2.1.il, in which it is hard to say whether the relationship of the constituents is appositional or rodificational, and it the latter, what the direction of modificaticn is.
3.3.222 $\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{N}$ _scmpounds. ihese are the unmarked form of compound, so semantically they can cnly be characterized negatively, i.e., they do not refer to the kind of thing specitied at the beginning of Section 3.3 .2 .201 . It should be noted that animate species, or parts of them, while figuring as heads in Section 3.3.2.2.2 can also function, like inanimate things, as modifiers, e.ges as possessors/originators/orientation-points or as materials:
<jhia-daatv> (L 352) 'cricken's wing" ("chickenwing"),


Higher－order compounds that show this structure at all levels are，for instance，＜ngonct－dopv＝pin＞（l 16）＇strips of leather used as a whip＂（＂ox－hide＝nhip＂），＜jhiem三puaz－ doqv＝dzaeng）（L 95）＂gold ring＇（＂gold三hand－extremity－ ring＂）．There are also higher－orcer compcunds whose immedi－ ate constituents show this siructure but have a different structure at lower levels：e．g．g 〈in－iyaatc＝dzatv＞ ＂tobacco－pipe＇（＂opium－spicy hct＝pipe＂），which has the


So far as $T S$ is concerned，it normally ccurs at all


3．3．3 Yert－containing＿nomins̊＿ccimpundss These are nominalizations of clauses，anc we will present them here according to the underiying clause．It is convenient to start with compounds containing adjectives，（V）first， because of the simplicity of the underlying clause： subject－N＋predicate $V$ adj ${ }^{\circ}$

3．3．31 Nominal＿compounds＿containing＿Y $=$ These can be classified according to whether the $v^{\text {adj }}$ follows the $N$ ， which is the usual case，or precedes it id ．Whatever the order：the usual rule is for the first constituent to undergo tone sandhi．
 adjectives that precede the $N$ ．It is hard to see any semantic rationale governing hat acjectives precede the $N$ ， so we will simply give some examples of them：〈syang〉＇new＇， as in 〈syang－deic＞$\{\mathbb{L} 219\}$＇new fields＇，＜lcz＞＇old jacket＇， ＜kaam＞＇sweet＇，as in＜kaam－tsiax＞（1 i25）＇sugar－cane＇ （＜tsiax＞＇sugar－cane＇），＜khuncx）＂empty＂，as in ＜khungx＝kaqc－pawing＞（L 140）＇empty can＇，〈pau〉 1long，tlow－ ing（as a robe）＇，as in＜pau－lui＞（L 39）＇7ong robe＇，＜khuv＞ ＂good＂，as in＜khuvfihauv＞（ 1 139）＇a gcod course of action．［6］Some $V$ normally follow $N$ but precede it in a few compounds：e．g．g＜gaai＞＇cry＇if 〈gaai－hnoi＞（LL 146） ＇dry days＇ （cf．＜fand－tsiu－gaai＞＇driec peppers＇：＜paeqc＞ ＂white＂，as in 〈paeac－yiac＞（L 310）＇akind of white moth＂ icf．〈jhuvopaeqc＞＂white sog＇？．

Both＂fore－＂adjectives and＂aft－＂adjectives may co－ occur in the same compound：e．g．，〈syang＝jhuv－jhieqv＞＂new black dog＇．（Query：are there cther than＂common sense＂ criteria for placing the first cut，＂＝＂，where we have done so here？）It has been claimed（Miso Language team 1972：264） that the pattern of foreplacec $v$ is borrowed from Cininese，on the grounds that all che y involved are Chonese loanwords．This is very possitly true，but a few
［6］Note that Lombard shows no is here．The intor－ mant that 1 shecked this with，homever，used is．
remarks need to be made in this connection:
(a) lhere are many $V$ 's borrowed from Chinese that adj
are not prepositive -- in fact the great majority of them are not -- so the question arises why one parificuiar smail subset of Chinese-derived adjectives is prepositive. Some

(b) The pattern presumabiy begins with Chinese $v$ * compounds borrowed holus-bolus and spreas tc compouncs h in which $N$ was not a loanword, e.g.g 〈syang-hnyaangx> 'new year".
(c) The very common augmentative morpheme <tomb-> 'big" is prepositive and is apparently not frcr Chinese. However since it cannot occur predicatively it cannot be demonstrated to be an adjective, and may ir crigin be a noun -as is its (postpositive!) dirninutivize counterpart <tamn> (see Sections 3.3.2.2.1, 3.3.5.2(b)). Bur, whatever its origins <toma> is now felt to be serrantically akin to the $v$ <hlo> 'big' and clearly migkt have helped the adj prepositive-adjective pattern to establish itself in mien.
(d) The variability of adjective placement is just ancîher example of the general variability of modifier placement in Mien nominal compouncs.

3．3．312 Inenaft＝inadjective．The＂aft－＂adjective is the norm and only a few examples will be given：＜auv－hlo＞ （L i 80）＂major wife＇（＜hlo＞＇bic＇l，《aur－faix＞（L 5）＇a seccnd wife（taken after death of tirst）＇（＜taix＞＇small＇），〈auv－piqv＞（L 13）＂sterile wife＂（〈piqv＞＂barren，sterile＂）， ＜eiv－siqv＞（L 3）＇red chair＇$\langle\langle s i q v\rangle$＇red＇），〈eiv－waaic〉 ＇broken chair＇（＜waaic〉＇spoiled，broken＇l，〈tungz－im＞＇cas－ trated pig＇（＜im＞（L 1）＇castratec＇），＜tungz－tshaan＞（L 180） ＇medium－sized pig＂（＜tshaan＞＂medium－sized＂）．

More than one＂aft＂adjective may cccur in one and the same compound：〈jhianx－jhiequ＝kcx＞＂an agec black perscn＂ （＂fcreigner－black＝old），and the first＂aft＂anjective under－ goes tone sandhi before the second．［？］

3．3．32 Nominal＿compounds＿containinc＿astisn＝yerbse ince again it is the norm for the verb to follow．he will deal with the unusual，reverse，order first．

[^12]
#### Abstract

$3.3 .321 \quad Y \pm+N$＿componndse $\quad$ variery of underiying clauses is represented：e．g．：〈aab－dzyaauc＝buax＞（L 9）   （L 6）＇playmate，friend＂（presumatly from＜x tshaux tcic aa0－dzyaauc）＂x be－with companicn play＂，although it might equally well come from＜toic tshaux $x$ aald－dzyaauc＞＂compan－ ion plays with $X^{\prime \prime}$ ，which would bring it into line with〈bienz－toic＞－－see below，＜peu－tshia＞il 17）vrented vehi－ cle＇（presumably from＜x peu tshia＞＂x be－responsible－for vehiclev），〈pwangh－waac＞（L 31）＇mords cf praise＂（presum－ atly from＜X kawngv waac pwangh y＞＂x speaks words praise $Y^{*}$ ），〈bienz－toic〉（1．45）＇companicn＇（presumably from＜toic bienz $x$ ）mompanion escorts $x$＂，thus an agentive construc－ tion）．


The underlying clauses are tentatives［8］but at any

[^13]rate it is quite clear that $N$ stands ir a variety of under－ lying grammatical relationstips to $V$ ．There is perhaps a tendency for $N$ to be in some kinc of oblique？y－governed h relationship to $V$ ．
$3.3 .322 \mathrm{~N} \pm \mathbf{N}$ compoundse Here perhaps there is a ten－ dency for $i n$ to be either the sutject cr direct object of $v$ in underlying gramatical structure：e．g．，＜auv－pyaux＞（L 5） ＇a runaway wife＇（＜auv pyaux）＇the mife runs away＇\}, ＜bungv－phyatv＞（L 43）＂dislocared bone＇（＜buncy phyatv＞＂the bone slips out of place＇），＜nyaah－pawng（ 142 ）＇buck teeth＂ （〈nyaah pawng〉 the teeth protrudes），〈juav－bong〉＇a risen loaf of bread＂（＜juav bong）＂the bread rises＂．So far these compounds have contained intransitive verbs，sc that they are quite parallel in structure to $\mathrm{IN}_{\mathrm{h}}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{adj}} \mathrm{j}$－ compounds．Sometimes $V$ is transitive（nith object deleted）： e．g．＂＜tsaangz－\｛haw＞（L 163）＇an elephant used io nauỉ lcads＇（cf．＜tsaangz thaw kaqc－naiv＞＇the eiephant hauls things ${ }^{1}$ ．

Sometimes $N$ is object：e．g．，＜kuD－ngwaaz＝hlawpv＞ h （L 283）＇a foster－child，adopted child（＜X hiawpv kuO－ pounds with verbal constituents．in tha is a language in which the verbal constituent must always stanc to the right，Warutamasintop（1975）argues that they should be listed in the lexicon as singie iexical itens rather than derived by Iransformational rules（as in Fasold 1969，Warotamasikkhadit 1972）or by lexiśㅣ rules las ing for instance，Thomson 1973）．
ngwaaz＞＂x picks－up－and－carries－in－arms chilowlif9］＜juav－ ipv）（L ill3）＇steamed bread＂（X ifv juav）＂x covers－overi－ and－processes！bread＂），〈nyaanh－dawngc＞（L 93）＂a down－ payment＇（cf．＜X dawngc nyaati＂X lays－dewn－as－security money＂．Sometimes $N_{h}$ is arguably cblique：＜maaz－keh＞ （L 118）＇a riding－horse＇（ $<x$ keh maaz）＂$X$ rides on a horse＇），〈pyaav－byaac〉（L 34）＇a walking－stick＇（＜x byac pyaav＞＂X walks－witin－a－stick［with－a－lstick＂）．

3．3．4 Compounds＿of＿more＿than＿two＿mcrinemess These have been treated passim under the various headings so far．［10］ de can divide them into（a）compounds that break down into either bimorphemic compounds or timorphenic compounds and singie norphemes on the one hand，ard（b）compounds that contain a reduced relative clause on the other．of the former category only one type remains to be treated，vize those shat contain verbs：$N$ is cmplex and the modifier is a verb：e．g．g＜puaz－doqv＝daauv）（L 25）＂riddle tinger＂ （＂hand－extremity＝long＂）；we have no sure examples ot aft－ placed complex $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{h}}$ 。

3．3．41 Nominal＿compounds＿containing＿a＿reguced＿reia＝ fiye＿clauses Let us note first of all that for theories

[^14]which attempt to provide a syntactic deep structure for nom－ inal compounds，eyery such compound contains a reduced rela－ tive clause．But in keeping with our general apprach of eclecticism and expository simplicity he will discuss under this heading only those compounds where the RC is more obvi－ ously such，i．e．．where the moditier is more than simply a noun or a verb．
（a）The most typical case is where medifier is $[V+N]=$ e．g．g with modifier first，〈taav－hlieqvfrienh＞＇blacksmith＂ （＂beat－ir on＝person＂），［11］〈ishawh－dzaangctkaqc－naiv＞IL 183） ＂an eraser＂（＂rub＝written－wordsłthing＂），〈kaatv－tseivfdzuqc） （L 125）＇special knifefor cutting paper used in spirit ceremonies＂（＂cut－paper＝knife＂），＜mangc－pyauvimienh＞ ＂watchperson＂（＂watch－house＝person＂）：with N tirst Sinianx＝tsauvfpyauv）＇watchman＇（＂fcreigner＝guard（v．）－ house＂），＜tshia＝pungx－puatv＞（L 173）＂motorcycle＂ （＂vehicle＝release－fart＂）．
（b）Modifier may also be a resultative bincme＜pungx－ yiaz＝gingx三dia＞（L 144）＇a diuretic medicine＇fírom＜pungx yiaz gingx（L 144）vo have pain when urinating（waid urine smartwh，〈jiacttingcłtsung三dyargx＞（L 337）＇a tree
［11］Note that this is the epposite of the inai ord－ er，as exhibited，for instance，in cabn＝tat－phom ＂barber shop＂（＂shop＝cut－hair＂），tut is the same as the Chinese order in such compounds．
with tirm roots＇（＂put－down＝settle examples of a prepositive $N$ when the $R C$ is of this degree of complexity．
（c）＂RC＂may also be $[N+V]$ ：〈jhuv＝tsaux－nauv＞＂a dog with a broken leg＂（＂dog三leg＝te－broken＊），〈bing＝tweiv－daauv） （L 76）＂long－tailed monkey＂（morkey＝tail－long＂）；in this case the compound is a nominalization of a ltcpic＊ subjectl－sentence：＜jhuv tsaux nauv＞with regard to the doy，the leg is broken＂，＜bing tweiv daauv＞＂As for the mon－ key，the tail is long＂．

## 3．3．5 Otber＿aspects＿of＿nominsl＿comfcundss

3．3．51 fompounds＿with＿bound＿constituentse These are dealt with separately，simply because it is not possible to ascribe with certainty a part－of－speech classification to bound forms．It should be recalled tcc that the bcundary between compounds and polysyllabic morptieces is not clear－ cut：see Section 3.3 above，and immediately following sec－ tions below．

## 3．3．52 IyRes＿of＿bound＿constituente

（a）Prefixes：Some of these are clear in meaning，such as
（i） the augmentative＜tomb－＞，which，for instance，
when added to <jhiepv> 'bear' yields <tom0-jhiepv> (1 71) 'Targe bear, mature bear', and when added to <mienh> 'person' yields <tomh-mienh> (l 71) 'adults, grcwn-ups',
<kaiO-> (L 12), usually reduced to <kal->, 'side', in the prefix-having sfatial nouns; <ka@-nyuaz> (L 122) interior: Lspacel inside', 〈kaO-nyiac> (L 122) 'exterior; [space] outside", etc.; presumably the <kub-> of <kut-ngwaaic> (i 128) ilspace] above' is a yersion of this with the reduced vonei harmonizing with the back-rounded element of the following stressed syllable.[12]

Qther prefixes are not so clear in meaning: e.g., <mD-> occurs in certain body-parts: <mc-gawngv> 'nead', <mD-tsing> 'eye's 〈minnawh> 'ear". Is this the same form as occurs in <milomion 'cat'? It is quite likely that the <mO-> in <mOjhaangcftawn> "male human being, fusbanc', is the same <mil-> as in <mulsiaqvftawn> 'female human being, wite's and it may well be a reduced form of <mienh> "persci" ict. size double-
[12] See Section 1.2 for a ciscussicn of vowe?harmony=
＜mienh＞compounds＜mienh－jhaangcłmient：＞（L 327）＂men＂， ＜mienh－siaqvfinienh＞（L 237）＇wonan＇），tut this identifica－ tion would hardly fit the other compouncs just cited．
（b）Suffixes．The commonest sutfix－like form we have collected is the diminutivizer（－tawn），as in，for instance，〈tiah－tawn＞＇little table＇，＜pyaur－tann＞ilittle house＇． This can also be used with animate nouns，such as＜jhuv－ tawn＞＇little dog；puppy＇，and it is surely derived trom the homophonous free form 〈tawn＞＂son，chilc＂．

Another suffix is the vocative suffix＜－aa＞，which is not preceded by tone－sandhi：e．go，〈kawxfa＞＞＇Excuse me， sir＊（to broach a strange man，lit．＂Cl elder brother＂）．

There is a possible agentive suffix＜－tauh＞that we have found so far in only one word，viz．（touc－tauh＞（L 64） ＂a messenger＂（from 〈touc＞（L 64）＇to carry or convey a mes－ sage＇）．Like＜－tawn＞，＜－tauh＞has a homophonous semanti－ cally close free form，in this case＜tauh＞，the cif for human beings，higher animals and docrs：cf．Thai tua：in
 versus IU th cif for personae in a theatrical performance， animals，articles of clothing and furniture．
（c）Mocphans．By this term ne mear，foliowing Matisorí （1973：Sec．3．333），who created it，＂orphan morphs that only
occur in one or two compounds, anc to which it usually is inipossidle to assign any meaninc distinct from that of the compound as a whole". As in Lahu, they are apt to occur in the names of animals and plants, which otten run to several syilables: e.g.g (hantsiah) (L 2C8) "python' (both syllables), all but the first syllable in <nanqc=siend-nouh> (L 261) (a species of bird), all three syllables in <tamonaw 0 -ni> ( 4 74) 'jackfruit', the middle syllable in <kaam-tsaiv-pyouv) sorange" ("sweet-f?)-fruity), and so on.
(d) Loan_morphemess Pertiaps as many as fifty percent ot the morphemes of Mien represent fremocern loans from Chinese. These figure not merely as nominal morphemes, but as verbal morphemes and particles as mell. Both bound and free morphemes are represented amcng the pre-modern loans from Chinese, as well as compounds borrcwed as such. Many examples of morphemes and compounds borrowed from à premodern form of Chinese, as well as frem contemporary Yunnanese and Lac are to be found in the sutdivisions of Section 3.4 .1 on the Numerals.
3.3.53 Reduplication_in_nominal_cctrcungs: the only kind of reduplication we have cone acrcss is separate reduplication of the constituents of additive compouncs: see Section 3.3.2.2.1.2.

3:3:6 Einal_remarks_on_s_ger_cf_modifier_anc_moci= fiegs Subsuming under the term "mocifier", nominal morphemes, compound nouns, verbs anc reduced re? etive clauses, we can conclude our review of the variots kinas of conpounds in Mien with some generalizing renarks: viz.
(a) where the modifier is a noun (simple or compound) or a reduced relative clause, animate $N$ s tend to be on the left, and inanimate $N s$, with very few exceptions, on the right,
(t) where the modifier is a $v$, the order seems to be adj a lexical feature of the $v$-- sost acjectives are posicpoadj sixive but some are prepositive;
(c) where the modifier is an action verb there seems perhaps to be an ergative principle applying: it in the clause underlying the compound $N$ is sutject $c f$ an intransitive verb or object of a transitive verb then $N$ is on the left, otherwise it is on the right; however this ergative principle, if real, is cut across by a tendency of animate $N$ other than those referring to ethnic Mien persons to occur on the left under any circurstances, anc for the inoividual word <mienh> to occur on the right under any circumstances.

Thus the ergative principle is seen most clearly in compounds where $N_{n}$ is not <mienh> but is human. Thus: sub-
 wife' ("wite-fleew), <bungw-phyatv> (L 43) 'dislcatec bone" ("bcne=slip-out-of-1ine"), 〈tseiv-beux> (L 47) "firecracker" ("paper-explode"), <juav-bong> (L 113) 'risen bread" ("bread-rise") object of a transitive verb -- <kulingwaazhlawpy (L 283) 'a foster-chilc, adopted child" ("child=pick-up"), 1131 (tawn-maaiz> (L i5) "a son adopted through purchase" inson-buy"), 〈juav-ipv> (L 113) 'steamed pread" ("bread=cover-over"), (nyaanh-canngc) (i 93) "a down-payment" ("meney=1ay-down*), <dzuih-paengx=tsua> (L 166) "pursed lips" ("lips=pucker (trans.)").

As examples of the subject cf transitive verb with a $N$ other than (mient) (such cases are hard to come by) on the right, we have <bienz-toic> (L45) "companion' ("escori=companion"), <touc-tauh) (L 64) 'a nessenger" (cf. <touc waac> (i 64) 'to bear a messace" ("to bear-as-amessage language*, and <taun> ctherwise a Clf for perscns, here equals 'person'l. it shculd be emphasized that the hypethesis that ergativity may parity explain the constituent ordering in this class of compounc is highly tenta-

[^15]tive, and needs to be checked against a nuch larger body of lexical data than we currently have.

It is in terms of the tendency of the word <mienh> to occur on the right in compouncs that we can attempt to explain some peculiarities of <mienh>-ccmfouncs: (a) <mient> can nct be combined with the noun-derived diminutive <tawn> (Query: Is this because this woulc force it tc appear on the left?!; it) where <mienh> is combinec with a postpositive adjective, or intransitive verb of which it is the underiying subject, <mienh> appears on the left but another, "dummy", 〈mienh> is placed at the right: hence the phenomenon of the "doublemient compound". isee Saction 3.3.2.1.1).

Other examples of this are: 〈rienh-dzweicfmienh> (L 237) 'pretty person' (<dzweic> 'pretty'in <mienhlweicfmient> (L 237) vazy perscn', <rienh-hngongxfmienh> (L 237) 'simpletong harmless person' $\langle\langle h n g o n g x\rangle$ 'docile, stupidfl. In these double-<mienh> capounos the medial moditier may be a bound form, as in <nienh-jhaangcfmienh> ©maie person*.

It the modifier is a relative ciause derived from a "corment", or a sentential predicate construction, there may be an gRtignal <mienh> on the right: thus <mienh=tsaux-nauv (Emienty) 'person with a broken leg' (see passini.

However, the hypothesis that the cccurrence of the final <mienh> in dquble-<mienh> compotnos is caused by the discomfort of having the word <eient> or the left of a nominal compound referring to a perscn needs refinement, for (a) Mien possesses compounds with <mienth or the left that are lexically distinguished by the presence or absence of the finai <mienh> -- <mienh-koxfmienh> (L 237) sold person', (skox> 'old') versus (mienh-kox) 'viliage headman'; notice that the latter form is semantically exccentric, it may be that the right-appended <mienh> represents a productive process used only in semantically endocentric compounds; (b) forms occur in which the leit-most constituent is not <mienh>: although it does have a human reterent, and yet the piecnastic right-appended <mient> may be used: e.go. <auvkwaav(=mierh)> "widow" ("wife-berett=perscn").
3.4. Special_tyees_of_NE_11_quantified_NP2 By quantified NP we mean an NP containing a (see, PS-rules in Section 3.11\%. In connection with the quantified NP we shall discuss first the constituent min" (Sections 3.4.1, et seq.) and the "Clf" (Section 3.4.2).
3.4.1 Inemumerals_[Numle[14] Nunerals include the

114] The following account of the Mien numeral system takes as ics starting point the excellent summary in Purnel! 1968:312-320.
numbers 1-9, multiplicative anc additive constructions invclvirg these (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.2 belcwh, and the words 'many', 'several's 'how many?' anc 'half". Partly as a result of extensive borrowing frcm Chinese, the Mien numeral system is a rather complicated cre. Sore idea of its compiexity can be gathered from the following table of the memerais involved in counting in the abstract from 1-30:

| 1. yietc | 11. tsiepc-yietq | 21. nyic-tsiepc=yietq |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2. i | 12. tsiepc-nyeic | 22. nyic-tsiepc=nyeic |
| 3. pua | 13. tsiepc-faam | 23. nyic-tsiepc=faam |
| 4. pyei | 14. tsiepc-feix | 24. ryic-tsiepc=feix |
| 5. pyaa | 15. tsiepc-hmz | 25. ryic-tsiepc=hmz |
| 6. jhuv | 16. tsiepc-luaqc | 26. ryic-tsiepc=luaqc |
| 7. siac | 17. tsiepc-tshietv | 27. ryic-tsiepc-tshietiv |
| 8. hietc | 18. tsiepc-petv | 28. ryic-tsiepc=petv |
| 9. duah | 19. tsiepc-jhuav | 29. ryic-tsiepc=jhuav |
| 10. tsiepc | 20. nyicttsiepc | 30. faa-tsiepe |

In the above table, numbers 1-9 are simkle, ioe.p they consist of a singie morpheme $=$ numbers 11-30 are complex, i.e.s they consist of multiple morphemes, while <tsiepc> "ten" is probably complex in underlying structure isee section 3.4.1.3.1.1.4.1 below). What aakes the above set of numerals relatively complicated, as East Asian languages go,[15] is (a) the suppletion (no common expression of $2-0$

〔15] The Japanese numeral systen is even more compli-
as between simple 2-9 on the cne hand, and 11-909 on the other) and (b) the morphophonemics, to scre extent segmental but more especially tonal, i.e.g the cocurrence or nonoccurrence of tone sandhi. See Section 3.4.1.31.1.1.3 beiow.j

cated.


There is more on co-occurrence questions at Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.3 below.
3.4.12 Provenience_of the_Nuinarphemese "Une" of Set I is fairly obviously from Chinese, but the tone is irregular (ct. the regular sone" of Set 11). The numerals from "twc" to "nine" of Set 1 presumably gc back to proto-miac" Yao.ll6j Set II, and Set Il in its entirety, along with "thousand", "ten thousand" and 'hundrec thousand" are premodern ioans from Chinese; "millicn" $\{\mathrm{s}$ from Lao. 1171 3-9 of Set if aremodern loans from chinese,[18] ioe., from some form of southwestern Mandarin. <sipv> cf Set III is presumably from lao. The remaining forms of set lll, as well as those of Set $I V$ which do nct ccincide with Set 11 require further study.
3.4.13 Orginary and_spefial_numeraticne Since Sets III and IV are highiy restricted functionally (see beiow), we shall confine our remarks in this secticn to Sets 1 and II

[^16]whose functions can be divided into (a) srdinary numeraticn, carcinal and crdinal, including counting in the abstract, and (b) special numeration.

### 3.4.131 Ordinary numeratien.

### 3.4.1311 Cardinal_numerals.

3.4.13111 Morphcphonemics_sf_the_nureralse From the scope of the term morphophozenics we exciude the suppietive phenomena discussed in Section 3.4.1 and Section 3.9.1.1 above, while including in it variatior in the form of morphemes whether determined by phonologicalg grammatical or lexical factors.
(A) Segmental morehophoremics.
(a) Dbligatery (i) <nyeic> 'z' of Set II, is replaced by <nyic> when it multiplies <ixieps> 'ten': i.e.es when it corresponds to English "twen-" (see Section 3.4.1 above). (ii) 〈faam>, ${ }^{3}$ • of Set 11 , is replaced by 〈faa> in a few cases, e.g.s (l) when it multiplies <tsiepc> 'ten', i.e.e when it corresponds to English Ethir-9, and (2) when modifying <hlaax> 'month' (see Section 3.4.1.3.2.4 below). Not enougn cases of the replacement have been found to determine whether it is conditioned phonologically, grammatically or lexically. Further investigation is needed.
(t) Intional (1) Even at fairiy slcw rates of speaking [tsi_pl representing <tsiepc> 'ten, -ty' is replaced by [tsi_l] when followed by the addend 〈luaqc> ' 6 ' = i.e.g in 16, 26, 36, etc. and larger complexes including these. !2: At slightiy faster rates of speec [tsi_pl changes before complement morphemes in additive constructions as follows:
(1) What happens at this rate of speaking in the environment "/--<-jhuaqu>" requires further study.
(2) Aí stiil faster rates of speed ltsiapl --) itsəl, with indeterminate vowel land tone) tetore all complement morphemes in additive constructions.
(B) Ional_morphophonemicsa is occurs (a) in the rorphemes for 1 and 3 of Set II when preceeding a wif "
multipiicand［19］isee，for instance，tatle in Section 3．4．1 above）；（ $D$ ）between 〈tsiepc＞＇ten，$-t y$＇and a foliowing addendum＂ones＂（see，for instance，table in Section 3．4．1 above：；$\{c$ ）between 〈nyeic＞＂two＂and fcllowing 〈paequ＞mut－ tiplicand in short－form numerals（see Section 3．4．1．3．1．1．4 belcw：（d）between＜nyic＞＇twen－＂anc the following clf multiplicand＜tsiepc＞，if this constructicn is followed by an addend＇ones＇morpheme：cf．＜nyicttsiepc＞ $20^{\circ}$ and ＜nyic－tsiepc＝yiety＞ 21 ＇；（el betneen the morpheme for ${ }^{\prime \prime} 3^{\prime}$ of Set ll and the word＜hlaax＞＂menth＂in＜taa－hlaax＞＇third lunar month＇（see beiow）；（f）in short－torm Num＇s（see Sec－ tion 3．4．1．3．1．1．4 below）between the penultimate power－of－ ten morpheme and the final acrpheme；（g）between the numerals 〈tshamv＞＇many＇，〈daamv〉＇half＂，〈tsiangv＞＂whele＇ －－and perhaps vacuousiy 〈duac＞＇cnly one＇－－and a tollow－ ing C1f．

3．4．13112 Ihe＿grammatical＿structure＿of＿numberse in Section 3．4．l above we distinguished between simple and cam－ plex numerals．In the numbers 〈yietv－paeqv＞＇100＇，＜yietc tshin＞ 11,000 \％〈yiete wanc＞ 10,000 ＇，〈yietc sinx＞ ＇ 100,000 ＇and 〈yietc laanh＞ $1,000,000^{\prime}$ ，the numeral＜yietv ～yietc＞＇ 1 ＇may optionally be deleted according to the gen－ eral rule of optional deletability cf that numeral in

[^17]quantity-expressions (Q) Isee turther Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.4.1 below, and the resultant numerals are then superficially simple but underlyingly caplex. <tsiepc> is exceptional in that it can never be preceded by <yietvrs yietcl in the number ' 10 ', but there is evidence that the <yietv $\sim$ yietc) is there uncerlyingly (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.4.1 below, so that we coulc conclace that the '1'-deletion rule is cbligatory with <tsiepc>.

In complex numerals, multiplicative constructions consist oí a qultiplien, (mr), or numerator, and a mulfiflisand (md) which will be a classifier (Clf) expressing a power of ten. Ke will follow Matisoff in calling tiese cifos "rcund number classifiers" (cif 1 . Complex nunerals also involve rn additive constructions, which consist of an augend (agd) anc an addend (adn). The constituent structure of the complex numeral $2,222,222$ is shown in the tree ciagran below:

## Ihe_Constituent Structure_ef_the_fouplex_Numeral <br> Siannh_itsinx_itwaanc_ittshin_nyeicttsienc三nyeic2

:222222223:


Note: For unexplained node-symbois see Section 3.ii

Sets＿de＿lle Sets 1 and ll are partly complementary，e．g．e if the meaning＇ten（s）＂or＇hundred（s）＂is to be expressed there is no choice but to use the Set II morphemes 〈tsiepc＞ and＜paeqv＞，i．e．，the choice is cetermined by the meaning． dut choice of number morpheme is determined in syntactic rather than semantic ways as follcws：（1）Set II morphemes must be used（a）as the multipliers of 〈tsiepc＞and 〈paequ．， （b）as the addends to multiples cf 〈tsiepc＞，i．e．s as the addends in the numbers＜tsiepc－yietv＞ $11{ }^{\circ}$ thrcugh＜jhuavf tsiepc＝jhuav）＂gg＂and complexes including these，（c）at the enj oi short－form numerals（see belchl：（c）before a few non－Num Clf＇s（i．e．Cif＇s that are not Clt ins see below； （2）elsewhere use Set 1．Thus：
$\operatorname{Set} 1+\operatorname{Set} L I$
Set II＋Set 11

| pyeiftshin | 14，000\％ | tsiepe－ryeic | ＇12＇ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| siactweanc | －70：000 | nuztisiepe | －50． |
| duahtsinx | －900，000＇ | faam－paeck | ＊300＇ |

3．4．13114 Shorínierms＿of＿numeralse if a number above 100 is round it may in Mien，as in many languages of East Asia，be abbreviated．The short forf of a numeral is obtained lai by deieting the first numerai morpheme it it is ＇one＇（i．e．by appiying the＇1＇－deletion transformation to
the beginning of the numeral), along with (b) by deleting the last Clf (unless it is also the first Clf ), (c) by rn converting the morpheme thrust into final position ty applying rule (D) fire. the last mr) into Set II if it is not of Set II aiready, and (d) applying is between what are now the last two morphemes, and (e) by applying iS to <nyeic> if followed by <paequ>. Some examples:

| Number | Long Eorm | Sbert Eorm |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 240 | nyeictpaeqvifeix-tsiepc | nyeic-paeqv=feix |
| 530 | hmzfpaequffaa-tsiepc | hnztpaeqv=fanm |
| 1.100 | yietcftshinfpyaat | tshinyyietv |
| 15,000 | y ietcfwanctpyaaftshin | Fyaathanc=hmz |
| 170,000 | $y$ yetcrs inxfs iactheanc | sinx-tshietv |
| 920,000 | duahts inxfitwaanc | duahtsinx $=$ nyeic |

3.4.1.3.1.1.4.1.

Sore_genersiiyistic_remarks_ed shariened_numeralsz If we regard the production of shortform numerals as a derivational process, then (i) kule (c) must be applied after kule (b): this reans that at least some transformations must precede lexicai insertion; (ii) Rule (d) must be applied after Rule (b): this means that at least some transformations apply before scme rules of TS; (iii) since rules (a)-(e) above nill nct generate the short form of 〈yietv-paeqvftsiepc> '110', which is <paeqv-yietv>
but they will do so if the＂tens＂Cif has a multiplier ＜yietv＞，i．e．，if the long－form ingut is＜yietv－paeqvayietr－ tsiepci，this counts as some eviderice that the numerals ＜tsiepc－yietc，tsiepc－nyeic．．．tsiepc－jhuav＞ $111,12 \ldots$ etc．－－to which the＂1＂－deletion transformation obliga－ torily applies（See above，and below）．

3．4．13115 Cther features＿of＿Aums
（A）Numés＿with＿gapse In Mieng as in English，and presumably in most lif not all：languages that count above ten，it the mr of a Clf is semanticallyzero then a gap will appear in the surface structure of the Num at scth the mr and clt positions．For instance，in mien as in tnglish sone？is one，or its Mien equivałent，añ not，as it were， ＂nonety－one＊，or its Mien analogue．Sifilarly，＇1，001＇is sne thousand and one，or its Mien analogue，and not，as it were，＂one thousand ng iundred ang nenety－one＂，or its mîen analogue．Now in Mien，for Num＇s in the hundreds or greater showing a gap immediately before the＂cnes＂position，the ＂ones＂position is filled by Set I morfhemes：e．y．o＂202＂ ends in 〈i＞，and not in 〈nyeic＞， $203^{\circ}$ ends in＜pua＞，and not in 〈faam＞，and so on．
（B）Numis＿with＿Sishaux2＿ingis Mien further resembles English in that $201,202,301,405$ eic．contain an cptional＜tshaux＞＇and＇in their verbalization：thus

```
<nyeictpaeqvf(rshauxf)yietc,
*201, 202 ...' and so on.
```

nyeictpeequf(tshauxt)i
...
3.4.1311S Cautionary_remark_apcut_tigh_numberse There is a certain air of unreality about righ numbers in Mien. Informants hesitate, for instance, abcut when to inseri <tshaux> 'anj" (indeed Purnell (1968) cces not even mention the insertion of 〈tshaux> at all). Infcrmants may further say <tsiepe tshin> instead of <waaric> for ${ }^{10,000 ', ~ a n d ~}$ <paequ tshin> instead of <six> for $100,000^{\prime}$, unless they are thinking carefully.

The fact is that the Mien do not have much use for high numbers in their araditional lite, anc where modernization has brought the need to use them: they usually quate the high numbers in the language of modernizations ise., Lao for the Laotian mien (and presumably Thas for the Thailand Mien). Many Laotian Mien have had sone schcoling with Lao as the medium and thereby learned scme arithmetic, in which case they do their computations in Lac. They are hard put to it to do even simple arithmetic in Mien.[20] kesternstyle year-numbers and dates in general are usually quoted in Lao.

[^18]3.4.1312 Ordinal numeralse urcinal numerals are formed by preposing to the corresponding cardimal nureral the bound


```
teio-yietc 'first"
teio-nyeic 'second*
teiJ-faam 'third'
teio-jhuav 'ninth'
teio-paeq* 'hundredtt'
teio-tshin vthcusandth*
```

etc. For 'first' there is also the morpheme <taauh> 'first, foremost; the top; the beginning; (L 68$)$ ( Chio (AD \#il94) (pre-modern loan). Syntactically, like cardinal Num's, the ordinals cannot be preposed directily to the head noun (N) but require the intervention of a Clf: e.gos <tein-yietv tauh mienh> or <taauh tauh mienh> "first Clf person": "the first person'.

[^19]3.4.132 Speciain_mumpatione Under this heading we group a miscellany of cases which are peculiar in one way or another.
3.4.1321 Usage_witincertain_classifiers: lhe rule stated. in Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.3 above means that Set 1 morphemes for 1-9 are used in front cf cif's other than clf's that are not clf 's, with the exception ct a couple cf such rn Cif's that require Set Il numerals. Jre cnly such cif's that we have found so far are used in weighing precious metals: viz. (í) 〈tsinh> "a "mace"; tenth of a Chinese ounce, or tael' (< Ch. (AD \#1072.4)) (Lcmbard (342) and Purnell (1968:319) show (tsin> i.e., aid tone) and (b) <lungz> 'Chinese ounce, tael' (く Ch. (AC \#542)). Both Clt's are premodern loans. Perhaps the entire styisitic register for dealing in precious metals is from (pre-modern) Chinese, hence the use of the Chinese Num's.i22l Between these two Clf's and the preceding Num's the same rules of TS apply as do between mr (Num) and md (Cif ) bitbin complex Num's isee above). Thus (yietv-tsinh, nyeicttsinh, faam-tsinh, teixf tsinh> ets:

[^20]3.4.1322 Days_of ine_wetke The week and its days are cultural phenomena newly borrowed bi the Miene There is as yet ne common way of ralking about them.
(a) The Christian Mien torrcw the Chinese word for 'week" (Chinese (AD \#538.1, $\# 687$ ) in the form <teiz-paaix) or <liz-paaix> as well as the Chirese menner of referring to Moncay through Saturday as "week one" (Chinese (AD w538.1, *687, \#201! through "week six" and Sunday as "week day" (Cninese (AD \#538.1, *687, \#937: Ehcugh they use the inherited PMY morpheme for "day'. Set ll numerals are used. Thus:

| <leiz-paaixfyietv> | 'Monday' |
| :--- | :--- |
| <leiz-paaixfnyeic> | 'Tuescay" |
| <leiz-paaixffaam> | 'Hednesday" |
| <leiz-paaixfhnoi> | 'Suncay" |

Since it has strong Christian overtones, this way of referring to the days of the week is something of a shioboleth among the Mien.
(b) Purnell mentions (19te:319) ancther way of referring to the days of the week which is nct recognized by my informants: -- viz. to use the ordinal Num's, calling the days, again starting with Mondey, Etirst day", "second day* and so on: thus -- <teio-yietr hnoi, teio-nyeic hnci>

Monday, Tuesday etc. Purnell coes nct make it ciear what Sunday is called in this system.
(c) The usual wont of my infcrmants is to borrow the Lao names for the days of the week iwhich themselves are Dorrowed from Thai; where they were calcued on the English or French prototypes -- "Moon day, Mars day, Venus day" etc. -- using the Sanskrit names of the heavenly bodies): Thus

| wanh | wanh jhan | "Monday" |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | angkhaanh $\sim$ ajkhaanh | "Tuesday* |
|  | wanh phuty | 'Wednesday" |
|  | wanh phavhatv | 'Thursday |
|  | wanh sukv | 'Friday' |
|  | wann saux | 'Saturday ${ }^{\text {c }}$ |
|  | wanh aathitv | 'Suncay ${ }^{\prime}$ |

3.4.1323 Days_of_the_lunar_manthe Here the bound form <saengo-s (< Ch. (AD \#8040 (?l)) is subjected to $T S$ and preposed to the Set II Num's. Thus:
saengo-faam "3rd day of the lunar wonth"
saengo-hmz "5th day of the lunar gonth"
saengi-luagv "6th day of the lunar month"
etc.
3.4.1324 Ine_twelye_lunar_month_nausse Except for the first month (see below) these are formed by preposing the Set 11 numerals to the morpheme 〈hlaax> 'moong month'. For the third month the numeral <faam> undergoes IS (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.l(8) above) anc also loses its final nasal (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.1(A) atove). According to Purnell (196E:319) TS occurs between all the nurerals and <hlaax>, but according to my informants it occurs only between <faa(m)> and <nlaax>, i.e. the rules are the same as between mr and md in complex numerals isee Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.2 and Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.1.2(a) above. Thus:

| tsi0-hlaax | -1st lunar m |
| :---: | :---: |
| nyeicthl aax | -2nd iunar month' |
| faa-hlaax | '3ro lurar month' |
| feixfhlaax | "4th lunar month" |
| hmzthl aax | 'sth lurar month' |
| luaqufhlaax | "th lurar month" |
| tshietyfhlaax | -7th lusar month ${ }^{\text {e }}$ |
| petuthleax | "Eth luriar month" |
| jhuavthlaax | "Gth lunar month* |
| tsiepcthlaax | 'licth lunar monen' |
| tsiepc-yiet v ¢hliaax | -13th lurar month' |
| tsiepc-nye icłhleax | - 1zth lurar merêin |

The lunar calendar is borrowed fram the chinese, with the
same system of intercalary months. "Tc intercaiate" is <nyunc> (Chinese (AD \#948); premacdern). Kncwing this we can explain the form <tsio> in the nare of the first month as (Chinese (AD \#1198)), which as a pre-modern loan would yield <tsing>, which would then, like <faam> undergo IS arid lose its final nasal; Purnell (1968:319] gives its underlyinf tone as $\langle-h\rangle$, but this nust te just a guess: cf. <tsingh>, (L 155) 'city (formerly wallec)' < Ch. (AD \#1204). It rigit be pointed out here, in passing, that Mien has also borrowed the rest of the traditicnal chinese calendrical and horary system of ten "celestial stems" and twelve mearthly branches", though it is falling intc desuetude except, for divinatory and ritual purposes, ancng supernaturalist experts.
3.4.1325 Naming_of_offspring_by_bifth_ordere "Childhood names are tasically numbering systers, one for boys and anather for girls... The bound forms ['lauv'l and ['mh'] (a coniraction of [muic'] "daughter" [with is -- C.C.J) are preposed to names for boys and giris respectivelyw. (L 333) The names for the sons and daughters are respectively what 1 have called Nur.'s Sets 111 and IV in Section 1 above. Here are the forms 1 collected, and alongside them Lombard's forms (332). They run from first-born down to tenth-born (the ranking actually assigned an individual may be tictitious (L 332)). As usuals I have respelled Lcmbard's forms.

## Set_111:__Sons

| Gour |  | Lcmbard |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | layc kauv, lauv taax | Bauv kauv, lauv taa |
| 2 | taqe naix | laqc raix |
| 3 | lauv san | lauv san |
| 4 | lauv sux | 1 auv sux |
| 5 | lauv uv | lauv uv |
| 6 | lauv luc | lauv lue |
| 7 | lauv tshic | lauv tshic |
| 8 | lauv paac | lauy paac |
| 9 | lauv jhiouv | lauv jhiouv |
| 10 | tsiepc | laur sipy |

## Set_IY:_-Daughters

|  | Court |  |  | bard |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $\begin{aligned} & \left\{\begin{array}{c} m 0- \\ a 0- \end{array}\right\} \\ & \left\{\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{kuv} \\ \mathrm{aO}- \end{array}\right\} \end{aligned}$ | koin. <br> meix, <br> mwangz | $\begin{gathered} m u- \\ \left.\begin{array}{c} \text { muv- } \\ m u- \end{array}\right\} \end{gathered}$ | meix <br> $\pi$ пix, $^{2}$ nwangz |
| 2 | $\left\{\begin{array}{l} m D^{-} \\ a 0- \end{array}\right\}$ | naix | m: ${ }^{\text {- }}$ | naix |
| 3 | * | faam | * | fam |
| 4 | * | feix | - | feix |
| 5 | * | hmz | $\cdots$ | manv |
| 6 | * | luaze | * | luaqc |
| 7 | - | tshietv | * | tshietv |
| 8 | $\cdots$ | petv | * | petv |
| 9 | * | jhuav | $=$ | jhuav |
| 10 | * | tsiepc | * | tsiepc |

Note that Set IV for the most part coircides with Set Il, white Stt III, as we said abcve, represents some form of south-western Mandaring presumably the form of Funnanese used as a lingua franca in the Golden Triangle.[23] <taax> for the eldest son would represent CFinese (AD \#952) (see Mien-Mandarin tone correspondences in Dchner 1973:101, while Lombard's "taa" is difficult tc interfret: perhaps it is a

1231 See, for instance, Lomtard (c-99), sev. manjo (i.e. <ihanx>).
mistranscription. The provenience anc interpretation of <kauv, naix, koih, meix, mwangz> require further investigation. My informants deny that the name <nanv> has any numerical import. Notice that 'tenth scas is a suppletive Num: in Court's list it lacks the prefix <lauv> and is borrowed from Set Il. In Lombard's list it is borrowed, presumably from Northern thai, thcugh it might equally well be fror lao.
3.4.1326 Numbers_in_lexicalized_combinationse tellowing are a few exarples of numerical expressions that are special in one way or another:
(a) <feix-kawqu> 'to be square' (etymciogically the pre-modern representation of Chinese (AL \#809. \#5003). This difters from the ordinary enumerative expression <pyei pung kawqu> 'four corners', which has the Set 1 Num <pyei> and the Cif <pung> "side? (< Ch, (AD t25): (<pung> is omitted accerding to Purnell $11968: 319$. It can function as a preposed attributive expression as in <feix-kawqvfiah> "square table" (with TS at the $m={ }^{\prime \prime}$ juncture according to Purneil (1968:320)). (feix-kawqu) also differs from ordinary numerative expressions that shcw the Set Il numeral <feix> in that it subjects this morpheme to $T S$ (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.2 abovel.
（b）＜feix－fung＞＇in all tirections＇．This differs fron the correspondinc ordinary rumerative expression＜dyei duna＞ －four sides＇$\{$ see $(a)$ immediately above；＜punc＞is function－ ing here as an futo－โif isee belowl）in showing the Set II rumeral，and like 〈feix－kawev＞in（э）atove，it is irreqular in showing TS．Açin like＜foix－kawqu＞its constituents can le severally redurificated to produce＜feix－feix＝punq－nung＞ ＇in all the four cuarters and directions＇（no $T S$ at the $m=m$ juncture accordine te Purnell（1968：320））．
（c）〈faam－wuanhftshietvfbaeq＞（cf．L 363，where no TS tetween＜faam＞ard＜wuanh＞）the three major souls and seven lesser souls＇（the pre－modern resresentation of Chinese four－syliatie－expression．This is a formulaic expression used in invocations．It is irrecular in using the set Il numerals ant omitting clfos：cf．the ordinary numerative expression＜pur rewm wuanh＞（L 304）＇the three major souls＇．
（d）＜faam－pungffeixflcuc＞（L 288）＇all directions＇ letymologically the pre－modern representation of a Chinese four－syllatie expression meaning literally＂three sides four roads＂）．This expression，like（ai－ic）above，is special in using the Set 11 numerals and in lackina a Cif tefore＜louc＞ ＇rceá。

The syntactic peculiarities of the above four numerical lex－ icalized combinations may be due to their stemming fron the
liturgical or song language li.e.p teing borrowed from and/or modelled on classical Chinesel.
3.4.2 Elassifierse A classifier (Clf) is a type of limited roun tist occurs in immediate constituency with numerals (Num). Semantically Clf's serve to specify in some way, either qualitatively or quantitatively, a noun lovert or implicit), or a verb (see figures 3(II)-3(III), below). In the case of Clf's specifying verbs the cif most commonly means 'times", but other meanings, such as "ways" are possible, and syntactically the Clf will immediately include a VP
 (see Figure 3(IV), below). In the case where the Clf specifies a noun it will be included in a NP of which the $N$ is the head, at least in underlying structure. [24]

Because even cif's that specify verbs are themselves a kind of nown, and thus by definiticn form pari of a NP although functioning advertially, we shall deal with all Clf's in the present section. he shall refer to classifiers of nouns as noun-clf's and classifiers of verbs as verb-
[24] if the noun is not present in surface structure and the referent is situationally obvious, it may be necessary to say that the Cif is specitying either a semantic entity whose lexical sionificant happens to have been deleted, or, more probatly, that Cif's specify the real-worid referent directly, regardless of how (and whether) tine latter is lexically enccded.

Clfos. For many of the terms and the general plan of the following exposition we are indeted tc Matiscff (1973:Sec. 3.42). Syntactically, Clf's perform the function of enabling Num's to enter into constituency with nouns and verbs. Semantically, they indiviouate, instantiate or ctherwise precise the reference of 3 noun cr verb.

Especially with nounss where homonyry of polysemy is present, cifos perform a very impcrtant disambiguating functions as can be seen from the following exanples: <i nawn dia> "twc pills" versus <i tseu dia> "tho bolts of cloth"; <i nawm tsyangh-hoc> 'two hours' versus 〈i puan tsyangh-hoc> "twc minutes"; <i litv uam> "two liters of water" versus <i tiuh uam> 'two streams/rivers' versus <i pcuc uam> 'two crossings of a stream/river'. As <i pcuc uam> shows, the Clf may not only narrow the sense of a $N P$, but it may also add to it -- in this case adding a deverbative meaning. it should also be noted that clf's may fail to disambiguate: thus <i tiuh jhung> means either "two dragons" or "two rainbows'; <i tiuh pyauv> means either "tho trails" or "two methods'.

As a final general remark on classifiers, it should be noted that $f$ iner points of classifier csage are very likely to vary from one locality or sub-cialect to another.

## EIGURE 3(11)

Structive_of <yia_bua_rua_tach_(rienb)_iringh>
"We_three_co"
$N_{2}$ and NP are in apposition to cne another.


[^21]
## EIGERE_3(1iI)

Syntactic_Structure_cf
〈yia-bua_mingh_Rua-tayh_rienh>
Whe_go_as_a_threescre_(3_Ircis)"


Note: For unexplained node-symbols see Sec. 3.11

Syntactic_structure_of_<ninh_sigy_Jbawn Yietc_disy/dzunc/Cungc/fung




Note: For unexplained node-symbals see Sec. 3.11
Etymologically we have tracec several Clf's to Chinese, and it is very likely that further investigation would reveal a Chinese origin for quite a few acre.
3.4.21 Kinds_of_clfise $u n$ fcrial cr serantic grounds it is convenient to distinguish at least the following subtypes of Clf's.

### 3.4.211 Guto=clfiss

3.4.2111 Ncun=autoclassifierse Soue nouns may be their own Clt's. This is often the case in Southeast Asian languages with classifier-systems, but Mien seems to contain remarkably few suciio In fact the present investigator has found only a handful, of which several refer tc units of time, e.g., 〈haoi> 'day' and <hnyaangx> 'year'. Furtherncre they seem to have the syntactic pecuriarity that the homophonous-coreferential head noun nust be obligatorily deleted.

Thus, in order tc say "two days" or "three years" one says <i hnoi> or <pua hnyaangx>, and these are normal Nur + clf constructions, but though the heac noun should follow the Num + Clf construction directly it seems to be ungramatical to sayg for instance, <i tnci hnoi> or <pua hnyaangx hnyaangx and so on, presumatly because of a surface structure constraint blocking the cccurrence of sequences of homophononous-coreterential nouns in the same NP (it sounds awkward). Some other autcclassifiers cf nouns are: <pung> 'direction; side', <nyungc> 'kind, way'.
3.4 .21111
certed inyolyemente These are ari irteresting kinc of kautoclassifier, also founc in other iancuages in the area. As Guman beings, kinsmen normally take the specific cif's for human beings (see Section 3.4.2.1.3), but when certain combinations of kinsmen are living or acting together as a group certain kinship terms may be used as autoclassifiers.

Thus one says <i muaz> 'the two siblings ftogether)' (cf. Thai sž2g phîi-nź2gl, <i tawn-maac> $m o t h e r ~ a n d ~ c h i l d ~$ (together)' (lit. "twc child[-andi-mother"), $\langle i$ tawn-tiac)

 together" one resorts to the protctypical familial autoclassifier of concerted involvement, <hmwangu>. This can be glossed for convenience as "family", but in order te understand its behavior as an autcclassifier it is better translated as 'family comembers, corprising at least the nucleus of nusband and wife'; thus <i hnwangv) ("two howansy's") means "married couple; husband and wife (together)".

This then brings us to the way one says 'father: mother and child $\{t o g e t h e r)^{\prime}$ : viz. <pue mmangv> ("three buwangy's")s though cne can also say, periphrasticallys <i hemwang tshaux tauh tawn> lit. "twc hmwaggy's and lonel
human-Clf cffspring".
3.4 .2112

Yerb=autoclassifiers gbjectse in some cases a vert nay be its own Clf. Thus the verb 'to $k i c k "$ is <dicq>, and in crcer to say 'he gives jotin one kick, one may say <ninh ciqu Jhawn yietc diqu> ("he kicks John one kicku), in which the seccnd (diqu> is a cif, and cculd be replaced by the cif <czunc> 'time' without changing the meaning (See Figure 3(IV) in Section 3.4.2). This use of a verb as its own Clf seens to be possible to a quite considerable extent, and whether the pheromenon is lexically or syntacticaliy constrained is a question requiring further investigation. Using a vert as its autociassitier is in fact using it as a bemophongus cognete object isee Section 3.4 .2 .1 .2 below regarding cognate objects). Where the verb is transifive, i.e.g where it has an autonomous noun as (outer) object, the vert-autcclassifier can be regarded as functioning as a measure classifier of the autonomous noun (see Section 3.4.2.1.4 belon).
3.4.212 Yerb-Classifiers_Y=clfisle A diagram of the syntactic structure in which V-Clí's occur is given in figure $3(1 V)$ above. Khat is in fact happening is that they are occurring in NP's dominated by adverbial phrases (AdvP), i.e., functioning adverbially. They are in fact what are traditionally known as cognate objects, and Chao 1968:312 et
seq. uses this latter term with reference tc Chinese. As Chac (1968:312) notes, cognate cbjects may cccur as structures indicating the number of intes of an action, its duration, extent, direction or destinaticn. We shall discuss then further in Chapter IV. Sut he can go beyond cognate objects and argue that the Clf's in Figure 3 (III) are also V-Cif's. but these are clearly alsc N-Clf's, so that we would have to say that $v-C i f \prime s$ comprise all N-Clf's plus the subset that can occur in the structure in Figure $3(i v)$.

It is further arguable that the e cf Figure $3\{1 V$ ) at a deeper level has the same structure of the affigure $3(I X)$ in Section $3 . i l$ below, but that the $N$ cces nct occur on the surface either because (a) it is identical with the cif, i.e.g it is an futo-Clf, and thus undergces an obligatory deletion of $N$ that is homophonous and coreferential with the Clf (see (1) above), or becatse (t) it is abstract, i.e.g it is a bundle of semantic features with no phonological representation, or perhaps is represented by a recent formal-register loanword equivalent to "cccasion', "method" etc. which is too pedantic to be in natural use.
3.4.2121 A_selection_of_Yerb=clisse Since, as we have indicated above in Section 3.4.2.1.1.2, verbs may be autociassified, iee., verís mey generate ncmiphonous autoclassifiers to an extent that needs fixtter investigation, we
shall not try to list homophonous vert-autoclassifiers -there may after all turn out to be as may of them as there are verbs in the language $-\infty$ ne shall list some nonhomophonous v-Clf's. Again there is some overlap with other kinds of classifiers:

| <pouc> | ```for steps icf. <biac>l, stages, stream cross- ings``` |
| :---: | :---: |
| <pung> | for directions, sices |
| <biac> | for steps or strides; stitches |
| <phawng> | for rows of hoeing |
| <touc> | for a certain perisd of time: trips |
| <thawngx> | for calamities: crops; marriages (cf. <tshamx>); stages of life |
| <karng> | for puffs of air cr tlasts of wind |
| <jiac> | for doses, or events in which several things happen at the same time falso 〈giac>) |
| <dzunc> | for times, occurrences, instances |
| <nyungc> | for manners, ways: modes |
| <luix> | for litters of anirals |

3.4.213 Specific_clfiss These are the "classifiers" par excellence, that have, in principle, to be memorized separateiy for each noun in the language. However to describe them thus is an overstatement for at least two reasons: (a) nouns referring to ncn-discrete entities take measure Clf's that are, in many cases, cetermined not by the
identity of the noung but，as we said ir Section 3．4．2．1．3 above，by real－world circumstances，i．e．g the object or action used to do the measuring，and（b）specific Clt＇s tend to refer not so much to particular ncuns as to classes of real－world entities，such as human beings，animals，long thin objects and so on．

Having said that，however，we must，on the other hand， note（a）that some specitic Clf＇s are usec for very res－ tricted classes of things，such as 〈simv＞，apparentiy used only of lengths of thatch mats（the latter being used for roofing a housel，as in＜pyei simv gaan＞ifour lengins of thatch mats＂（L 209，341），or 〈gnaav＞tor branches ar limbs （L 199，342），and（b）that in some cases it is hard to see what the distinguishing feature of the class is，as with the specific Clf＜thawngz＞used for calamities，marriages，crops or stages of life，as in＜pua thawngx raanc＞three calami－ ties＇，〈yietc thawngx tio－sen＞＇one crof ct peanuts＇ 1183, 341）－－in fact，in Mien，as in other Asian ncun－classifying languages，there is one particular cif isee Section 3．4．1．2．4 below），the usage of which seems hypertrophied to a point that might threaten the entire system of classifica－ tion．

Having made those cautionary remarks，let us give some examples：＜laanh＞for human beings（adults cnly，according
to Lombard (343): denied by my informants), <tauh> i<Che (AD \#1015) for human beings, higher animals; ghosts and spirits (sometimes, see Section 3.4.2.1.t), and doors (L 65, 342): <tiuh> (< Ch. (AD \#257)) for long narron objects, animate or inanimate, literal or metafhorical, including snakes, dragons, rainbows, rivers, rcads, stories, songs: lives and minds; <paengx> (< Ch. iAD \#740.2)) for pencils, guns and other long, thin otjects there my informants said that the objects were not as long as these classified by <tiuh>, but it should be noted that <peengx> also exists as a heaf-noun meaning thandie - its oniy point of contact with Chinese, for the Chinese originii is not, apparently used as a Clf in the source-language, as are the other Chinese torms so far cited): <choncx> for rooms, narrow fields, small spaces 42 108, $34-21$; <Fhan> for mosquito nets; <dzong> for fields to be cultivated.

Where the grouping effected by the specific cit does nor seem to make sense, as, for instance that ot human beings, higher animals and doors, there are at least three possible explanations: (a) that further investigation would reveal that the native speakers do perceive the entities grouped as having something in common, for instance, that doors are to the Mien somehow anthrcpo- or zoomorphic;[25]
[25] The tact that the Chinese source-ward for <taun> means 'head" as a Nh in Chinese shculd be borne in mind.
(b) that there once was something in conmen which cultural change -- let us say, a change in the design of coors -- has now effaced; (c) that not oniy the flf has borrowed. as in the case of 〈tauh>, tut also the grouging of entities tc be used with the Clf fwich pushes the protlem of the reason for the grouping back to the source-latisuagei.

It should further be pointed out, typcicgically, that what distinguishes Mien and other ncun-classitying languages from, say, English, is not the existence ct Clf's per se -after all, we say in English "an iter cf news", "a strcke ot luck", etc. -- but the abseoce of sonnl nouns as a grammatical category. For the singular-flural marking is a means cf indixiduating nouns, and lacking this method, other types of language perforce resort to other stratagems: it is individuation which is the specific functicn of "specific Clf's".
3.4.2131 A_selecsign_of spesifis_classifierse The following list of specific classifiers is cmpiled from 1 341343 and from my own work with informants. We feel that it is fairly complete, but we make no claim that it is absolutely exhaustive. There is some inevitable overlap with Measure Cif's and Group Clf's:

〈aax> for words or phrases (cf. <jhioux>; mouthfuls; small amounts
<pienx> for flat, smcoth objects, such as razor

|  | blades（which can also take＜dzung＞），phono－ graph records（which can aisc take＜khwaiv＞）： lett－overs |
| :---: | :---: |
| ＜penv＞ | for planks and lorg flet cbjects iman of these can also take＜ktwaiv＞） |
| ＜paengx＞ | for pencils，guns，anc other long thin objects \｛cf．〈tiuh〉） |
| ＜paav＞ | for brcoms；bundles of things |
| ＜puaqu＞ | for areas，sections or sides（cf．＜pung＞）； groups of people |
| ＜pung＞ | tor sides（cf．\｛maengx＞，〈puaqv＞），corners， riverbanks，（attachef）wings |
| ＜puanv＞ | for books |
| ＜puan） | for hours（according to 1 341：query whether it is not rather usec for minutes：cf． ＜nawn） |
| ＜puanc＞ | for families；househoids（cí＜pyauv）：sec－ tions or divisions of tcoks；categories of knowledge |
| ＜pyaur＞ | for families，househclds（cf．＜puanc＞ |
| ＜phin） | for pages |
| ＜phoux＞ | for ships，boats；grirdstones；scissors； pliers |
| ＜phaan＞ | for mosquito nets |
| ＜tienv＞ | for dots or periods |
| ＜tiuh＞ | for long narrow objects，such as snakes，dra－ gons，trees，sticks，rivers，trails，rain－ bows；for stories，songs，ninds，lives |
| ＜tiuc＞ | for reasons，tasks，Elenents（of the four Elements） |
| ＜teix＞ | for jackets and trcusers |
| ＜tauh＞ | for pecple（cf．〈laanh＞）animals，spirits， ghosts；doors |


| ＜tawv＞ | for clcuds；for bunches anc ciusters |
| :---: | :---: |
| ＜thawngx＞ | for calamities；crcps；merriages；stages of life |
| ＜diepv＞ | for drops |
| ＜jhiaqv＞ | for hands and feet lalso＜kiaqus？ |
| ＜jhioux＞ | for words and phrases（cf．＜aax＞） |
| ＜chongx＞ | for rooms，narrow fields and smail spaces |
| ＜kiaqu＞ | （see＜${ }^{\text {chiaqv＞）}}$ |
| ＜kweix＞ | for seasons（Auto－CIf） |
| ＜khaang＞ | for matters，affairs，sections；storeys of a house |
| ＜khuv＞ | for needles，and small irstruments |
| ＜khwaiv＞ | for flat，thin things（ct．＜piena＞）${ }^{\text {c }}$ curtains |
| ＜gwaav＞ | for branches， 1 imbs |
| ＜tseiv＞ | for thin flat things，such as sheets cf paper，letters，blades of grass |
| ＜tsangc＞ | for areas of confinment in the spirit world |
| ＜tsung＞ | for knives；clumps，clusters |
| ＜dzong＞ | for fields to be cultivated |
| ＜hingv＞ | for opposite poles in time or space |
| ＜maengx＞ | for sides，parts，edges or divisions |
| ＜nawni＞ | （see Section 3．4．2．1．4） |
| ＜laanh＞ | for people（adults，cf．〈taun＞） |

3．4．214 Ihe brodd＝pucpose＿specific＿clf＿snan⿴囗玉 Like many languages with systems of noun－classification，Mien has one specific cif of very general scope．［26］This is＜nawm．

However it does not seem to share with Lahu imas, the feature of being freely substitutable tor more specific Clf's. Informants reject its use for human beings, no matter how despised, and higher animals, tor instance. Eut it is used with lower animals, anc a white array of material and immaterial entities: for instance, while fishes require <tauh>, <nawm> is used with birds, fowls, tortoises, crabs, shrimps, ants, flies, mosquitces anc insects in general, fruit and vegetables (in which case it refers to individual itemsl, medicine (in which case it reters tc pilis)= dalland grain-shaped things (perhaps its criginal sphere of usage), cups, bcttles, boxes, bags, sacks, horns of animals, teeth, hammers, vehicles, houses, shops, beaches, places, countries, forests, corners, barriers and checkpoints, written characters, names, timepieces, watshes of the night, months, seasons (which cat alsc be auto-classified. sculs and certain kinds of ghosts (others take <tauh>), customs and traditions, sorrows lthere may be sone overlap with <thawngx> here (see above)), etc., etc.

In general it is the "garbage can" cir. It seems tc be broader in usage than thai $\boldsymbol{7}$ an, for instance, but it is narrower than mandarin (AD 4222.4 ) and Lahu quà, in that it can-

[^22]not be used with human beings and higher animals. lis use with immaterial and abstract entities seems to guarantee it a great future. With its catchall character it is hard to say whether it is threatening the whcle semantic basis of the specitic-clf system, or is, cn the contrary, an integral and essential part of it, the fis-alleq that enables that ambitious enterprise to which the Mien are committed by the typology of their language $-v_{i z}$. the classification of the whole of reafity -- to succeed at all.
3.4.215 Measure_clfise These are used tc quantity $N$ 's referring to entities, that are, or can be viewed, as nondiscrete, such as liquids, particulate substances, areas of land, stretches of road and so forth. They are usuaily referred to in English as mass ncunse Except for "abstract" measures, introduced from other languages, such as "meter', 'liter', "Chinese ounce' and so fcrth, they are mostly "concrete", i.e., derived by homoniny from either the noun for the thing which measures; or the verb for the action which measures.

Thus the noun <pienh> (L 13) means 'basin'. Now basins are discrete entities, and as (empty) itens cf equipment they can be counted: 〈pienh> is a $N$ anc takes its special Clf <nawm>. Sut when rice is being measured by the basinful, 〈pienh> ior its homonymous derivative) is used as a
measure Cif: thus <i pienh byauh> 'two basinlfulis of rice'. Similarly <paengh> 'botile; jar; cortairer" (L 19) has this double usage and it is protable that the name of any container can be used as a measure-Clf las, for instance, in Thail.

Un the other hand we have verbs of ackion from which measure clf's are derived. Thus there is a verb <phwangv> 'to scoop up in two hands', from which is derived the homonymous measure clf meaning 'a ccuble handful' as in <siac phwangv hmeiv> ii 43) 'seven couble hancfuls of rice'. Likewise <nyau> (L 268) 'to pick up cr grasp in the hanc' yields the measure Clf <nyau> 'handtul', 〈tsarh> (L 160) 'to measure by stretching out both arms tc tull lengin yields <tsamh> a measure-Clf for cloth, etc. Measure-Clf's homophonously derived from nouns and verbs are a commonplace of South East Asian = and other, languages: cot. English ma basin of rice", "a pinch of salt", "a iinger of rum", etc. Some measure Clf's that are not "concrete" in the sense just defined are provided by nature itself rather than human intervention, such as <hnoi> "day" and <hnyaangx> 'year'.
3.4.2151 A_selection_of_Measure_Clsssifierse as with the other lists of classifiers, the present one makes no claim to completeness and shows some cuerlap with other kinds of Clís:

| <aax> | for words or phrases of speech (cf. <jioux>); mouthfuls; small anounts |
| :---: | :---: |
| <pienh> | for basinfuls of rice |
| <piac> | a portion, such as of grein |
| <pipv> | for measuring cry stuffs, a unit equaling approximately five-eighths of a bushel (L 341): my informants say that it can aiso be used to measure liquics |
| <peu> | for packages and bincles |
| <paav> | for bundles of things |
| <pur> | for lumps of things |
| <pui> | for cups of tea (cf. <tsanv>); tor matching halves of an object |
| <puen> | for hours il $341 \%$ Guery: ir is it minutes? |
| <puin> | for certain kind cf containerfulls, eppreximately one bushel |
| <baaty> | for babt, a unit of Thai currency |
| <pheng> | for partitions or sections of walling |
| <phous | for clumps, bunches, Duncles |
| <phanx> | for loads which are tied or strapped tcgether |
| <phwangv> | for double handfuls |
| <taangis | for moments of time (cf. <sin) |
| <touc> | for periods of time |
| <tawr> | for bunches, clusters |
| <dacm> | for shoulder loads |
| <diepu> | for drops |
| <dawqu> | for cubits from elbow to tip of middie finger) |
| <dawnh> | for UcS. dollars |


| <thawngx> | for stages of life; marriages; crops ict. <tshaamx>; calamities |
| :---: | :---: |
| <inioux> | for words or phrases of speech (cf. <jnoux>) |
| <jhui> | for basketfuls |
| <koul | for measuring time, a unit of approximately three years' duration |
| <khanx> | for measuring weights: ore-sixth of a kilogram |
| <khawiqu | for measuring dry stuffs |
| <ganx> | for indicating halt sections of a unit; according to my intormant, the measure from the tip of the forefinger to the first joint (cf. 〈kweih>) |
| <tsinh> | for maces, a unit of weight of precious metals, one-tenth of a <lungz> |
| <tseuv> | for bolts of cloth |
| <tsamv> | for lengths of cloth and space |
| <tsanv> | for cupfuls |
| <tsanv> | for creps (cf. 〈thewngx>, used for rocting a house) |
| <tshaamx> | for measuring tire, a pericd from abcut tmelve to twenty days; a "uhile" |
| <feixftshtunh> | for arm's reaches |
| <sin> | for moments of time (cf. <taangh> |
| <simv> | for counting lengths of thatch mats |
| <senh> | for U.S. cents |
| <saengr> | for measurements with a container made from small sections of tamboo |
| <sutv> | for bindles or rolls of teoding |
| <nmoi> | for days |


| ＜neix＞ | for a cycle of twelve years |
| :---: | :---: |
| ＜naamx＞ | for for hand spans |
| ＜hnyaangx＞ | for years |
| ＜nyaus | for open handtuls |
| ＜nyum＞ | for bundles of rice |
| ＜ngaqu＞ | for lengths of wood or bamboc |
| ＜niengx＞ | for siices，such as of fruit |
| ＜hlamx＞ | for sections of bamboc li．e．g that part between two joints |
| ＜lungz＞ | for measuring precious metals，a Chinese ounce，ten 〈tsinh＞＇s |
| ＜wuanc＞ | for verses or sections of a lyric |
| 〈yiemc＞ | for parts，verses，layers，sections or por－ tions；suits of clcthes |
| ＜yienv＞ | for bowlfuls |

3．4．216 Grounclfose Several Cif＇s referring to aggre－ gates or collectivities may occur only with the Num＜yietc＞ ＇one＇，whether present or deleted in the surface structure． Here 〈yietc＞has a meaning like＇all＇or＇tahcle＇．Such are the Clf＇s＜tsuav＞（l 168）and＜tsnangx＞（1 171）：thus both ＜yietv tsunv mienh＞and＜yietc tswangx aienh＞sean vevery－ one；the whole group ${ }^{\prime}$ ，aithough it does not seem possibie to delete the 〈yietc＞with＜tsuanv＞．〈maarc＞＂all＇（L 245）may perhaps be a group clfe as in＜manc mient＞va！the pec－ piej，but if so it seems to nave the ieature that the Num ＜yietc＞is obligatorily deleted．

The Clf 〈teix> means something like "someness": it is in effect Elural marker with cemonstratives and inter rogative/indefinites -- cf. <naiv teix mienh> 'these people' versus <naiv mienh> 'this perscn'g thile in adverbial phrases <teix> occurs with and wittcut <yietc> meaning 'to some extent', e.g. <meih thuix tshlatv yietc teix> "you back oft a ititle" ("you withoraw move-cut one someness"), so that <naiv teix mienh> is literally and syntactically, "this someness of people", and is in inderlying structure <naiv yietc teix mienfi> -- Dem Num Clf A -- whis one someness of people: see Figures $3(1 x)$ and $(x)$ in Section 3.11.

Being abie to occur only with the nurreral <yietc> 'one" is not the normal sicuation for group classitiers. In the following section we list some norma grcup classifiers.
3.4.2161 Eselection_of group_classifierse The following list does not claim to be exhaustive, and it has some overlap with other categories of Clf, especially with measure classifiers:

| Sawtv> | for pairs las flashlight batteries); not <br> recognized by my informants |
| :--- | :--- |
| <pom> | for clumps of plants that grow in clumps, <br> such as bamboo, pacdy |
| <puaqu> | for groups of people |
| <pyauv> | for families, househcids |
| <bia> | for pairs of shoes tcf. <laengc> |


＜paeqv＞＇hundreds＇，〈tsinh＞＇thousancs＇g 〈waanc＞＇ten－ thousands＂，〈sinx＞＇hundred－thousanas＂，＜laanh＞＂millions＂． The grammatical structure of fum＇s cortaining cif＇s is rn explained in Section 3．4．1．3．1．1．2 Cc－cccurrence restric－ tions between tum and cif are expiained in section 3．4．1．3．1．1．3．

3．4．218 Quesi－Clfise The defining frame for a llf is ＂Num－N＂，but Clf＇s also characteristically occur in the （surface）frames（a）＂Demonstrative－－$N$＂anu（b） ＊InterrogativefIndefinite－－n：－examples（a）＜naiv tauh mienh＞＇this person＇（＂this Clf ferson＂），and（b）＜haivt tauhl＇whe？／anybody＇．There are some words that can occur in frames（a）and（b）but not in＊Num－－N＊．From a deep－ structure point of view we woilc clair that frames $\{a)$ and （b）have undergone 〈yietc＞（vone＂）－deletion and are underly－ ing（a）＂Demonctrative 〈yietc＞－－$N$＂and（b）＂Intg／Indef〈yietc＞－－$N^{\prime \prime}$－－in other words，（a）and（b）actually do contain the criterial frame mum－－Clt＂but the Num has te be 〈yielc＞＇one＂，which is subsequently celeted．

In either case we can define a class of quasi－Clfos： surface structurewise they cannot occur in＂Num－－N＂but they can occur in frames（a）and（b）；deep structura－mise they can occur in＂Num－－$N^{*}$ ，or＂Num－－＂，but Num has to be preceded by a Demonstrative（frame（a））or Intg／lndef itrame
（b）），and Num can only be 〈yietc＞＇cne＇，which is subse－ quently obligatorily deleted．Examples ct quasi－cif＇s are ＜dau＞＇ground＇，as in＜uav dau＞＇there＂（＂that ground＂）and ＜haivfdau＞＂where？／anywhere＂（＂mhich？／any ground＂），and ＜naw＞＇kind（？）＂as in＜mv nam＞＂like this＇and＜nnangv naivfnaw＇how？／anyhow＇（wlike which？／ary kino（？）＂）．Redu－ plicabliity may also establish another category ct quasi－ Clf：see the case of 〈hiaax＞＇month＇in Section 3．4．2．2．

3．4．22 Reduplication＿offifise the only use of the reduplication cf cif＇s that the investigator has discovered is to convey the meaning of＇every＇．The first constituent of the reduplicative construction undergces is：e．ges＜mein nnoi－hnoi taaih naiv＞＇you come here every day＇，＜bua luD－ Mienh tauh－tauh maaih fuqu main loqc）every one ot us iu Mien has wealth and happiness＂．Lither examples are＜namm－ nawm＇everything＇．〈tawv－tawv＞＇every clump＇．The redupii－ cated Cif may be followed by its $A$ ：e．geg itaun－tauh mienh h ＇everybody＂．

It should be noied that some words constitute a special category of quasi－Cif＂s：thus＜hlaax＞＂ronth＂is not a Cif because it requires the intervention of the clf＜nawn in order to be counted：e．g．，〈i nawn hlaax＞two months＇．Yet is undergoes reduplication like a cif－－＜hiaax－hlaax＞ ＇every month＇－－and it is，as a natural measure of tine，
semantically analogous to <hnoi> 'day" and <hnyaangx> "year', which are CIf's.
3.4.3 A_ngte_on_singular<Rlural_as_a_grameatical category in_Mienhs Just as Chinese with its suftix aen (AD \#609.I) has the germ of the Irido-European style grammaticalized number, so does Mien tco, with its morpheme <bua> appended to pronouns and appendable to rouns (see Section 3.2.6! together with its morpheme <teix〉 addec to demonstratives and interrogativesfindefinites when their $N$ is semantically $I^{+}$Plurall contain the seeds of gramatical number. If Mien were to develop further in this direction we could expect a priori a simultaneous decay of the nounclassitication system.
3.4.4 Polyguantifications A pclyquantificaticnal expression, $Q Q$, is one which contains two or more Num + Clf combinations belonging to the same NP. QQ's may De subdivided into "Qs redupiications" (where the o's are identicall and "QQ combinations" (where the Q's $^{\prime \prime}$ are different. QQ's reduplications that the investigator has come across are sequential in meaning anc are syntactically adverbial phrases: e.ge 〈yietc fouc yietc pcuc piagc pouc> (L 207) 'to make progress one step at a times ("one stage/step one stage/step enter stages*). Diten the <nyei> that marks adverbial phrases is present: <ninh mingh dzyaauc
ninh nyei muaz-toic yietc tauh yietc tauh nyei> 'he went to visit his brothers one after the cther' (wooe 'one person one ferson*-ly"). QQ reduplicaticn cannot be generated by the PS-rules in Section 3011 since they are patently the result of transformations.

The clearest case of $Q Q$ combinations the investigator has come across is in the case of iarge complex Num's, which contain sequences of structures containing Clf 's isee Section 3.4.2.1.7 above). If we consicer deep structure as well, then we should consider constructicns involving the Piurai number <teix> to be $Q Q$ cmbinaticns: these are generated by the Rule (8)(i) of the PS-ruics in Section 3 ail e.g., <hlang uav [yietcl teix i tauh miem> vthose two tall persons' (see figure $3(1 X)$ in Section 3.11$).$
3.4.41 Enactionse The only fracticns in common use in Mien are one-half, and Num-and-a-half. Half is expsessed by <damv> joined by is to the cif: thus <danv-paengh uam> 'half a bottle of water' and Num-and-a-half by "Num Cif pienx", e.g.e <pua hnyaangx pienx> (L 13) 'three and a haif years'. In these expressions <damv> is crammatically a Num meaning "half", and it undergoes iS before the fcllowing cif, with which it is in multiplicative relationstip. <pienx>, on the other hand, while it also means balfo, is a Clf, with ics Num <yietc> 'one' deleted, and is in additive relationship
to the quantificatory expression that precedes it. The presence of the Num 〈yietc> anc the additive relationship can be made clear in periphrasis: thus <pua hnyaangx tshaux yietc pienx ${ }^{\text {*three }}$ years together-with cne half".
3.4.42 Independent_multigle_guarfificatigne Tis refers to the case where the indivicual G's belong to $^{\text {se }}$ separate NP's. The only case I have noted is in the stating of rates, e.g.s <maaic pyouv yietc nevm i taatv> 'to sell fruit at two bant apiece" ("sell truit cne piece two baht").
3.5. Special_IyRes_of_NE_1I11:_dewonstratiye_NRs These are simply NP's containing demonstratives. (See Section 3.2.4) the demonstratives, like kC's, may occur in either prenominal or postiominal positicn.
3.5.1 Gyantified_NR!s_with_demcnstratives. These are derived in a quite straightformard way by the PS rules in Section 3.11 isee illustrative figures in Section 3.11 for examples).
3.6. Special_Eypes_cf_ncmioal_gycleus_fllliz_lesa= tignal_NE:se ey locational NP's we mean NP's containing a specific-location noun meaning such things as "inside",
 box" ("box inside"), <naiv nawm pyauv gab-haav> "behind this house" ("this Clf house behinowl. Ithe order of specific
iocation-noun and head noun may be reversed under circumstances that require further investigaticn. Likewise a postpositive demonstrative may be used in circumstances that require further investigation, e.g., <naiv gal-haay naiv> "behinc this'. In yiew of these uncertainties ! nave not tried to introduce specific location roums in the PS ruies or Section 3.il. Locational Np's are also oiscussed at Section 3.3.3.2.1.
3.7. Subcrdinatiye_constryctions_mith_snyeile These are introduced at two points in the NP by PS-rules (1)(v)(2)(iv) and (3)(i)--(13). Rules f1)(v)--(2)(iv) introduce the wNP + <nyei>" construction which is possessive in meaning: e.g.e <jhawn nyei pyauv> "John's house'. Ey Rule (2)(ivi the generation of FNP $+\langle n y e i\rangle=$ struciure is recursive, e.g., <jhawn nyei maa nyei aab-dzyaaucttoic nyei pyauv> 'John's mother's friend's house'.

The ruie-sequence (3)(i)-(i三: introduces <nyei> arter relative clauses. Examples are ([tsov nyancl nyei nawac> 'a bird that is bciled before it is eaten" ("iboil eatl <nyei> bird"j. It could be claimed that the possessive "NP nyei" structure and the specificatory "kC + ryei" structure are the same phenomenon and that i should not have treated them differently in the PS-rules. Ibis is cuite possible: the question requires further investigaticn, but it shouid be
noted that the possessive <nyei> is not omissible,[27] whereas the <nyei> after RC's may in certain cases be either replaced by <uav nyungc> (lit. "that kind") or omitted altogether.
3.8. NP: smith_N deletede $i a i N$ is usually aeleted $h$ h in an appositional NP following a pronoun (senerated by PS Rule l(ii) of Section 3.11). Thus <yiafbua i tauh $g$ mingh>[28] 'we two go' versus che full form <yiafbua i tauh mienh minghy $\quad$ id." ("we two Cit perscnis) go"); (b) Ni is usually omitted in quantified NP's used adverbially: e.g.p <yiafbua mingh i tauh $0>[29]$ 'Ino of us went; we went sa_deux? versus the full <yiafbua mingh i tauh mienh> ("we go two Clf person(s)w); <aengx taaih tath \& (L 345), 'and another one came" ("yet come [sc. one] Cif"); (c) N can be omitted efter preposed RC's, and this corresponds to substantivization of adjectives in Eurofean languages: e.g.g <hic nyei taaih> (L 28ミ: 'the big one is coning" (" lbig RC RELATIVIZER] come"), <hic nyei uav nanm f> (62) that big RC
one* (" [big RELAIIVIZER] yon [If"), <rinh yangh jhuatv

[27] when quizzed my informants insist it is not omissible even after pronouns. The points neeas further checking in natural speech, but since the <nyei> is under such circumstances normally reduced to a fleeting syllabic nasal, it is by no means easy tc check.
[28] "g" is written at the point where Nh would occur.
[29] In this and the following examples in this section "g" marks the spot where $N$ h has ceen deleted.
uav tiuh 6) (L 113) "He went the roundabeut way" ("He went
[crockedl yon Clf(for routes)": <meiv pun nyei uav teix RC RC Q, laengx ninhfbua nyei ei> (L 287) 'as for those who did not give [sc. an offeringl, take note of their Isc. gcod] intentions" (part of a prayer) (" Inot give RELATIVIZER] KL yon PlURALIZING-CIf acknowledge they PCSSESSIVIZER inten-
 went over to that side' ${ }^{\circ}$ [ $[$ crcss-over that place side] two Clful, <mingh RC 11 56i whe cre whe went" two Clf"), <mingh tauh g> (L 56; 'the cne whi went" (" lgol Cify) the last twc examples are structurally RC RC ambiguous: as glossed they are NP's stricturally the same as <touc tauh> 'the one who carries a message" in Figure $3\left(\mathrm{VI}^{\prime}\right)$ of Section 3.9 but they may alsc be vp's structurally identical with <touc tauh> in Figure $3(v 11)$ cf Section 3.9, except that Num has not been deleted, and meaning respectively 'they went over to that side 'a deug', and 'went alone'; see Section 3.9).

It may be that what eriggers deleticn of $N$ is not the local structural description bet the fact that the NP attached is anaphoric: note the fcllowirg typical cases of anaphora <nv tauh 8 kauh fauv) (L 2COI 'this one is more clever' ("this clf more clever"), 〈i tach E phix tuqv jiac> (L 42) 'the two are compatibie" ("two CIf be-matched be-able descend"). For examples of structures with $N$ deleted see Figures $3(\times 1)$ and $3(\times 11)$ in Section 3.11.
3.9. Uultiple_structural_anpicuitz_eactialiy_resolyed by_fene_sanghie Multiword NP's shade ctf into compound N's in one direction, and are to be distingished from homophonous VP's in the other. In figures $3(X)-3(x I I)$ below we illustrate this point with the triplet (a) <touc-tauh> (L 64), a compound-is smessenger" (with tone sanahi on <touc): (represented in figure 3(V)), (D) <tocic tauh>. (without tone sandhi) representing (a) the NF, the cne who carried the nessage' (represented in figure 3(vil), and (c) (phonologically identical to (b)s except, perhaps, in intonation -- this needs further investigaticnl a Vp icarried the message aione (representec in Figure sivil). For exampies and expansions of the various noces see PS ruies in Section 3.11.

Note that in the example in the last paragraph tone sandhi only serves to distinguish the ccmpounc noun trom the NP and the VP, but that the latter two are horophonous, and so structurally ambiguous. This situation seems to obtain quite generally for tone sandhi with reference to nominal phenomena, i.e.s tone sandhi marks "vocabulicity", wexicity", "wordhood" -- call it what you will -- ice., the status of being a single word, when it inheres in a colication of wordse ar, to put it dynamicaily, tone sandhi is part of "vocabulization" or "lexizaticn" in Mien, the process whereby a collocation of worcs becones a vocable or
single worde[30]

[^23]
## ELGURE_3(y)



Note: For unexplained node-symbols see Sec. 3.11

## ElGURE 3（YI）

## Ihe＿structure＿of＿Ihe＿beadless＿VE＿《Ious＿士auh＞ <br> ＇the＿one＿who＿carries＿the＿message＇



This is an intermediate structure：the deep struc－ ture has a（head）$N$ which is a sister to Det under the NP node，and a Num 〈yietc＞＂ones sister to Clf uncer the $G$ node．

Note：For unexplained node－syabols see Sec． 3.11

## E1GURE_3(y1I)

Ihe_structure_of the_ip_<tgis_tauh>
"carcied_地_message_sn_bistier_own"

"carry a message"
(C)t for human beings)

```
This is an intermediate structure with the same
deletions as in Figure 3(XI). Guantified NP's
under hdvp have the meaning 'alone', 'a geux', "a
trgis \({ }^{\circ}\) etc.
Note: For unexplained node-symbols see Sec. 3.11
```

3．10 $=$ NPS＿accoupanied＿ty＿REIticlese There are three forms that accompany $N P^{\prime} s$ and might be considered particles： （a）the preposed hypocoristic 〈aa＞with kinship terms：e．g．e． ＜aa tia＞＇daddy＇＝〈aa maa＞＂mommy＇，（b）the postposed voca－ tive＜aa＞，e．g．9 〈kawx aa＞excuse me，sire lto broach a strange man，lit．＂O elder brother${ }^{\boldsymbol{m}}$ ，ano（c）the postposed topicalizing particle＜aeq＞，e．g．．＜meit nyei pyauv aeq ．．．＞＞ Now as for your house，．．．＂．However we have interpreted form（a）as a prefix（see Section 3．3．3．5．2．fa），and form （b）as a sutfix（see Section 3.3 .3 .5 .2 （b））．As for form （c）：we interpret it syntactically not as entering immedi－ ately into constituency with the NP as such，but with the topic，a nigher－order entity ！see Secticn 2－3，4！

3．11．Ihe＿structure＿ot＿the＿Nt＿in＿techoicai＿detail gDS＿rulesle Here is a set of phrase－structure rules with which we can end our account of the NP．They are regrett－ ably heavy reasing and we hope that cur exampies in the preceding sentions of this chapter have been copious and lucid enough so that ine present section can te skipped． For concrete examples of the rules，the reader is urged to refer constantly to figures 3（VIil）－（XII）below．These are cross－referenced to the rules and exemplify each of them．
(1)(i)


A NP may consist of (i) urienter Phrasei 31] (Ori), or
(ii) a personal pronoun (N) optionally followed by an Np pron in apposition, optionally followec ty a Deterniner Structure (Det), or (iii) an anchropony, or personal proper name (iN J, optionally followed by a Det, or (iv) an proppers optional Det followed by a toponyng or frcper noun of place,

13111 would like to apologize tor the neologisms in this section. They are necessitated by the old protlem of naming the ievels cf a hierarchy: what do you do when you have distinguished more levels than there are terms in the current terminology? Cine cculd just as well use abstract symbols but i believe that semantically mosivated neologisms, however jarring, are easier for the human mind to process.
"Orienter" is a cover term for "Indicant" and "Instantiator". windicant" is a cover terin for demonstratives and interrogatives. "Instantiator* is a cover term for numerals and classifiers -- also grouped nere under the term quantity-expressicna ioj ithe later borrowed from Matisoff) -- ccined because it seemed convenient in the rulewriting tc insert an additional node immediately above " $\mathrm{cm}^{\mathrm{m}}$.
optionally followed by Det, or (v) an oftional set followed by a common noun in ${ }^{\text {com }}$, optionally follched by Det.


* At least one of the items in parentheses must be selected.

A Determiner Structure may consist of the following things according to grammatical context: (i) in the context tollowing a pronoun followed by an cpticna: $s P$, or the context following a proper noun ( $N$ prop ), Det consists of a denonstrative: (ii) in the context tollowing a common noun Det consists of an optional specifier structure (Sper) followed by an obligatory demonstrative; (iii) in the context preceding a place-noun li.e., a noung proper or conmon, reterfing to a place), Det consists of a demonstrative followed by an
optional spatial co-deictic (Spat -- see Section 3.2.5); (iv) in the context preceding a common ncun Det consists of an optional structure of "NP + nytim, followed by an opticnal Spec: followed by an oftional indicant!32] structure, followed ty an optional instantiatcri33l stracture: of these tour options, at least cne must be selected.

The constitution of the specifier structure (Spec) requires further investigation, tut it may be tentatively stated as follows:
(3)
(i)


In the context preceding an optional Orienter Phrase and an obligatory noun, the Specifier fhrase consists of in an optional demonstrative followed by $a$ Relative Clause (RC) and an optional Sutordinator, or (ii) an opticnal Demenstrative followed by a Relative Clause follcwed by an opticnal Orienter phrase; in the context fcllowing a ncun the Specifier Phrase consists of a Relative clause followed by an
[32] See preceding footnote.
[33] See footnote before last.
optional brienter Phrase.
(4) Ori $\rightarrow$ (Indic) (Inst)

* At least one option must be chosen.

The irienter Phrase consists of an opticnal indicant Phrase followed by an optional Instantiator Phrase: of these two structures at least one must be chosen.
(51(i)
(ii)


The Indicant Phrase consists (i) in NP-initial environment, of a Demonstrative or an lnterrogativel incefinite; cthermise (ii) the lndicant Phrase consists ot a cemonstrative. Kules (4)!i) and (ii) are to be applied in the crder in which they are numbered.
(6)(i) $\quad$ uavem $--3\left\{\begin{array}{l}R C-\operatorname{Inst} \\ -\infty \text { Spat } \\ \text { (ii) } \\ \text { naiv, naic, uav }\end{array}\right\}$
(i) In the enviroment following a kelative Ciause and preceding an Instantiator Phrase; ard in the environment proceeding a Spatial Co-Deictic expression Demonstrative consists of \{uav>; otherwise (ii) Demorstratige consists of either <naiv>, or <naic> or <uav>. kules (5)(i) and (ii) are to be applied in the order in which they are numbered.
(7) Intgflndef - haiv

The Interrogative/lndefinite consists of <haiv> which?/ any's
(8)(i)
(ii)

(i) In the environment preceding a noun with the semantic feature $1+$ Plurall the Instantiator Phrase consists of a quantity-expression followed by an optional quantityexpression; otherwise iii) it consists of a quantityexpression. Rules (7)fi) and (ii) are to be applied in the order in which they are numbered.
(9) Spat $\rightarrow$ jhiav, chaav maengx, maergx.e.etc.*

* For the giosses, which are rather intricate, the reader is referred to Section 3.2 .5 above.

Spatial Co-deictic consists of 〈jhiav>, or <chaav maengx>, or <maengx> ...e etc. (See list at Secticn 3.2.5).

$$
\text { (10) } Q \rightarrow \text { Num Clf }
$$

Quantity-expression consists of a Numeral followed by a Classifier.


Classifier consists (i) in the environment following a Numeral and preceding an optional quartity-expression followed by a noun with the semantic feature 14 piurally of <teix> ("someness"), (ii) in the environment following a sequence of Relative Clause anc <uav> respectively, of <nyungc> ('kindf)n (iii) otherwise, of 〈tauh>, <nawm>, etc.
(12)(i)


Numeral consists，（i）in the environment preceding＜teix＞ （Clf，＂someness＂）and in the environment fcllowing＜uav＞ （Dem，＇yonder＇）and preceding＜nyurigc＞（Clf，＇kind＇），of〈yietc＞（＇one＇），otherwise（ii）Aumeral consists of 〈yietc＞ （＇one＇），〈i＞（＇two＇），〈puà（＇three＇）．．．etc．（See Section 3.4 .1 and subdivisions）．
（13）Sub－－）nyei

The Subordinator consists of＜nyei＞．

For an account of the entities not yet rewritten to
 see the Sections 3.2 et seq．

Here follow figures of tree ciagrams iflustrating the various rules．Various nodes are provided with reterence numbers；at the corresponding number beneath the figure is indicated the PS－rule involved in the renriting of the sym－ bol．In figure $3(1 V)$ the introduction $c f$ the constituent QUEST and its placement vis－a－vis NP anc VP is not germane to she structure of the NP and is a matter of expository convenience only．

## ᄃIGURE_3SYILIL

## Rhrase_Stuuctuse_of <br> Soinh:bua_i_taut_mient2

Ilne_two of themi_the_two_cerscns?

NO


## ELEURE_3SIXI

Ebrase_Structure_of

## Shlaang_uav_teix_i_taut_rient2

IItacse_two_tall_persons?
fyander someness_of_tws_tall_persons:

"tall" 'yonder" "one" "someness" "tnc" Cif 'persons"


キทิ 〈yietc> will be subsequently obligatcrily deleted.

## E1GUEE_3(x)

Phrase_Structure_of_Shaiy_ieix_i_namm tshia_Rua_nawm_phing_uay_nyungc2<br>"which_two_three=wheeled_yehicles?<br>



| *1 | Rul | (1)(v) | 77 | Rule | (7) | 112 | Rule | (11)(i) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\ddagger 2$ | Rule | (2)(iv) | * 8 | Rule | (10) ** | 413 | Rule | (12)(ii) |
| *3 | Rule | (4) | $\pm 9$ | Rute | (10) | \#14 | Kule | (11)(isi) |
| $=4$ | Rule | (3)(i) | +10 | Rule | (5)(ii) | 715 | Rule | (6)(i) |
| \# | Rule | (5)(i) | \%11 | Rule | (8)(ii) | \%16 | kute | (11)(ii) |

*6 Rule (8)(i)
$\Rightarrow$ Obligatory 〈yietc>-deletion subsequently applied.

## ELGURE_31811

## Phrase_Strycture_ci

SRya_nawm_Rhing_uay_
"Ine_twonfrecubeeleg_yehicles: f-Iwg_the二three=wheels_L-hayingl_kind_yehicles"l


| 11 | Rule (l)ivs | * 5 | Rule (8)(ii) | *9 | Rule | (12) (is) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| *2 | Rule (2) (iv: | * 6 | Rule (5)(i) | 710 | Rule | (il)(iii) |
| +3 | Rule (3)(i) | 77 | Ruse (10) | 411 | Rule | (2)(iv) |
| +4 | Rule (4) | * | Rule (6)(i) | -12 | Rule | (11)(ii) |

## EIGUEE 318111

Pbrase＿Structyre＿of
Snaiv＿haiytnyuncx？2
こhbat is＿士bis？：


$\#$ Num 〈yietc＞subsequently deleted．

## CHAPIEK IV

4.1. Ine_structure_ct_Ibe_yEe This is problematic in varicus ways but a simplified overview can be given as fcilows:

$$
v P-->\operatorname{ladvP}) \quad \text { (a) (NF) (NP) }
$$

(b) Clause

A verb phrase consists of an opticnal eaverbial phrase (AE) followed is a Verbal Nucleus, tollowec by (a) an optional $4 P$, followed by another cptional NP: or (b) by a clause (this embedded ciause functions as object of $v$, and will be discussed at (complex 5 belch).


#### Abstract

4.2. Criferia_for yerbhocc_and_scae_associaied_nrcb= lems. As with Chinese: Lahu, Thai, etc., it is convenient to detine verbs in mien as that tcrm:class which can occur in the syntactic environment immeciately tollowing the negative particle, i.e., for mien, in the environment m/maiv--". This criterion is easily grasped, intuitively correct and easily applied, but there are a hanctul cf torms that we have discovered that are problematical inder this critericns in terms of what we can call the seconcary characteristics


of verts. These we will now cisciss:
(a) Egiluce_to appear_in_the_positiyes while we take negatability to be the defining characteristic of verds, a "verb" which can occur only in the negative is an aberrant phenomenon. Examples of these in Mien are to be found as follows:
(i)
in the negatiye imperatiye losutions iwhere <maiv> 'not' appears in its contreeted form <mv>: : smv tuqv> (L 234), 〈mv tungr> (L 234), ana <mv tungx> (L 234), all meaning 'con't'lll e.ge: <av tuqv mingh>, <mv tungv mingt>, <nv tungx mingh>, all meaning "Don't go:'. It shoulate noted that it is only as an imperative marker that <tuqv> oces not anpear in the positive (tcr other uses see beiowl.
(ii) in the expressions meaning sscarceily hardiy, not yery" <mv kamh> (L 241), <nv naange> (1 241): e.g.: 〈my kamh ko> (l 241) 'rct very far". <mv naangc kaux nyanc) (L 241) to have scarcely enough to eat" ("scarcely be-enough eat"); here too there is a nomophonous tcrar $\{1$ kam], which
[1] My intormants do mot recognize the seccnd formo and say that the third form is characteristic of Thailand Mien.

> might represent phonolosically either <kami or <kamD->, that appears in the polysyllabic veros <kamO-tsiav> (L 123 ) 'tc be repelled by' ano <kamb-dziax> (L 123 ) 'tc be atsoio; to be reluctant', which do occur in the fcsitive;
（iii）in the polite expressicn＜miv chaqv＞，〈mv chac＞ （high tone according to Lonbarc（108），low tone according tc my informants）＇ccn＇t bother to＇，as in＜mv chaqu tshau）（L 1C8）＇DCn＇t bother to hand it［to me］（as said tc a host nho cffers one：for instance，tea，implying，＂1＇ll just help myself＂）；
（iv）in the expression 〈ivv iamh（L 241）＇tc ？ack place or occasion for＇，as in 〈mv lamh kawngv（L 242） ＇to lack a suitable occasion tc say［it］＇；
（v）in the expression＜mv kunv＞$(L$ 291）ito nct be concerned about＇，as in＜mv kunv taic＞（L 241）＇to show no concern about 1 the possibility ofldying＇： here there is a homppionous form＜kunv＞that appears i：imperative expressicns；
（vi）in the expression＜mv kaengh＞（L 24i）＇not yet＇s as in＜tsaah mv kaengh czengh＞（L 241）vithe tea is not yet used upe；
（viii）in the expression＜nv taih＞［21（L 65）＇of costrse； ［2］L 65 spells this expression with a syilabic＂n＊
naturally，as in＜jhonc，my tain maaih nyei； maain，mv taih maaih nyei＞（l 65） $\operatorname{Poor}$ ipeople］， cf course we have them；rich lpeoplel，of course we have them＇；（vīi）in the expression＜mv paac＞ （L 234）＂but；however：also＇， 3 s in＜ninh kox nyei，mv paac mv doncc haix aqc－naangc＞（L 234） ＂He＇s old，but not particularly bad focking＇f＂He De－old Prt ，but not be－as－auch－as whichever assert De－unpleasant＝look－at＊），〈yia av paav oix nyei＞ （L 234）•1 also nant scme＇（＂I alsc mant Prt＂J；because of the cubicus verbhood of assrt these forms，we interpret thcse combinations in which a negative meaning cannct be oiscerned tc be lexical units，and sc hyptienate them：－－＜rv－ tain＞，＜mv－paac＞．
（i）Eailure＿to＿appear＿in＿the＿negetives Thisp of courses snculd by definiticn exclude a form from verb status．But there is a verb＜se〉～〈sue）（L 212；see also Section 2．3．4．2．2．）＇to be，ic be the case that，to be a fact thet＇s which is semantically virtually identical and syntactically virtually in complementery distribution with the verb＜tseiz＞（L 157）＇to be，tc be the case，to be

[^24]correct", with the latter vert tending to be linitec to non-assertive sentences, i.t.g ncgative anc interrogative sentences.
(c) Syntactic_behayior_in_the_negitive_not_parallel to Ibe_positiyė_the_case_of_Smy_peizs Itere is in mien an expression <rv pei> (L 234) 'to te unceriain; to wonder; perhaps'. Now there is also a verb <pei> 'to know" from which the just-quoted meaning of <mv fei> is dequcible, although it is somewhat idionatic, tut not its syntactic behavicr, for <mv peiv> in the above meining is in effect a sentence-final particle; compare the sentences in (i) below, in which <pei> occurs positive ane negative as a syntactically normal verb meaning 'to know', and the sentences in (ii) below: in which <my pei> is functicning as a sentencefinal particle: -- (i) <pei nyei hiuv nyei> (ll 17 ) to know
 (L 17) 'not know'; (ii) <ninh minch haivtdau mv pei> (l 234) "I worider where he is going" (whe go where [I] wonder")s <ninhtnyei tawn-jhweiv taix ninkh taic aq mv pei> smaybe her son is going to kill her' ("Her scn kill her dead NEW-SITASP maybewif(3]
[3] There is a perfectly analogous construction in Thai in which the expression for 'not know' 〈mai ruu〉, is used sentence-finally.
[4] For narrative vividness the event is presented aspectually as if it had already happenec.

In need of further investigation with regard to their secondary verbal characteristics are the norphologically exocentric forms <feix-pung> (L 157) 'tc te scuare' ("fcurside", morphologically Num + Auto-Clt), as in <pyei pung maain nyei, mv paac my feix-pung) (L. 27) ilt has fe:ir sides, but it is not square', and 〈thinh-teic> (L 77), with is funcementally a polar nominal corpound, "heaven and earth', used idiomatically to mean everything, everymere, ccmpletely, utterly' (much as in English osye beayen and earth) in icnized form: e.g.,
(i) <hemx thinh hemx teic> 4 78) to scold up and down; to scold about everytting" ("ssold labout] heaven [and] scold [abcut] earth"),
(ii) <lauh thinh lah teic> (i 78) 'tc de an exasperatingly long time' (whe-as-lors-a-time [as] heaven [and] be-as-Iong-be-as-long-a-time [as] earth"i,
but appears un-ionized and verbalized, cr at least acverbialized, after the negative particle, in expressions such as <tscux kong maiv thinh-teic> (L 7e) 'to work at a task but De unable to complete it" ("dc work rot [dcingl heaven [-and」-earth"!.

The above cases are the only forms we have discovered whose status as verbs is problenatice?, sc that we can now
proceed to general remarks abcut verbs. firstly, it should be noted that unlike Chinese but as in Thai, Lahu, etc., cne and the same negative paricie occurs befcre all verbs without exception: specifically nct tc have; for there not to be' is <mu maaih>. Seconcly, semantically, verbs, as might te expected, refer to events and states of affairs.
4.3. Mgrphological_aspects_sfithe_yerte Mien is an isolating language, typical of the lirguistic area made up by Chinese, Thai, Vietnamese, etce, arc verbs, like all parts of speech, are unchanging, having nc morphclogy in the sense ct accidense, i.e., paradigns of changes rung on certain parts of speech, of the Indo-European, Semitic or Indonesian type However, we will follch Chao (1966) and Matisctt (1972) in using the word morphology" to reter to processes of compounding, reduplication and elaboration oí the verb pirase nucleus. For traces of a tossilized derivational morpnoiogy, see Section 2.4.1.1 abcve.
4.4. Qyerlarping_subcateseries_of_yerbse Some times an intransitive verb can be usec transitively: e.g.e the verb <phyatv> (L 43: means 'to s?ip pastfout of line; to move beyond; to drop away', implying events that occur withcut human interventiong as in <burgv phyatv mic as> (L 43) 'the bone has become dislccated', but it can also be used with a human agent for at least an unintending human
agent) as subject and the thing that noves, literally or metaphorically, as object; as in <yia meiv phyatv meit nyei nyaanh dawtv> (L 43) 'I won't let your ocney be lost through oversight' ("i not let-slip-amay your acney \{so thet it] falls lout of existencej").

The case of a verb which seems tc be basically lagents, being able to occur with a subjectivalized nonintending "agent seems rare in Mien. I have not come across any others. Pertectly frcductive, however, is the case where a verd that normally takes an agent and a patient, with the agent as subject and the patient as object, may have no expressed agent and take the patient in front of it as a topic: e.g.e <rinh nyanc hnaangx: mv tuav nyanc lais 'He ate the rice but not the vegetables" can beccme <hnaangx nyanc, lai mv tuqv ryanc> ("ithe rice, lisome agent)l ate, the vegetables, [fthe sare agently didn't eat").

Since almost any semantically transitive verb can enter intc the second construction, it seems better not to set up two categories of verts, [tagent, +patient] and [tpatient], bit to say that you have one sutcategcry, viz. transitive, which can always undergo agent-celeticn and patienttopicalizaticn (for further discussion, see below).
4.5. Verbs_classified_bymorpholocical_structures
4.5.1 Canonical_ferm_of_yarbs:_rcacmerghemics_mone= syllaplese Simple verbs aremace up cf a single morphene, and verb morphemes, like all morphemes in mien. are in the great majority of cases monosyllabic. Examples of simple, monssyllabic verbs will be tound $c n$ alncst every page of this study, and there is no need to mertion any here. what was said above in Section 3.3 regarding nouns applies mutatis mutancis to verbs: viz, when contronted with a polysyllabic string whose most important compcnent seams to De a veroal morpheme, the analyst only fas twc likely alternatives to consider: either the string is a syntactic construction, consisting of more than one mordg or it is a composite verb.

Ye for morphoicgical compounds and syntaciic constructions are situated along an axis of productivity ct combination which is more like a coninuum inan a series of disarete carponents. And indeed the polysyllabic string way be neither morphological compound nor syntactic corstruction but simply a polysyllabic single vertal morpheme.
4.5 .2

Some_yeqds_of_dibious_acrphemic_sirycture: Rolysyllabic_yerb_morphemes_or_cgnacund_yerbsi we have tinree situations, the first two of which are inherently
dubious and the third may in fact be duticus because hard to separate tror the second: viz, (1) polysyllatic vert rerphemes, (2) verbs containing an icentifiable morfheme together with a morphan, and (3) compoure verbs. As with ncuns we wili separate every syllable by a hyphen whether identitiable as a morpheme or not. Assignments to category (i) or (2) are of course provisicnal: since scmeone may come along and identify the component syllables as morphemes.


Ut these <kamD-dziax> 'to fear' and <kamD-tsiav> 'to tind repugnant, can be suspected of telonging to category (2) because of semantic similarity; can me, or could one once, extract a morphene <kam0> with icentifiable meaning and tone? On the other hand <laengfkaerg> may be suspected of actualiy being a compound because it is separately reduplicable: <laengflaengłkaeng-kaenc> ii zã7) 'îo be naked'.
4.5.4 Yerbs_containigg_an_icentifiable_morgheme

Icjether_with_a_morphane E.g., <hung(-heic) (L 223, 230)
＇to be easy＇where＜nung 0 －＞is mystericus，tut＜neic＞ （L 223）exists alone，with the same meaning．Parallel tc this is the case of 〈laiohhlopv＞（L 289）itc be cirty，fil－ thy，defiled＇，where 〈laio－＞is mystericuss Dut＜hlopv＞on its own means pretty muich the sare thinc as the disyliatic form（L 282）．An interesting set of cases degins with the syllable
＜taq［－＞：〈taqu－bienv＞$\{1$ 64）＇tc be inside out＂ versus 〈bienv＞（L 15）＇to turn something over：？ ＜gaangx＞（L 147）＇to turn arounc；turn about tace； De backward＇，
（iii）＜taq［－gopv＞＜L 65）to iie on cne＇s stomach＇versus ＜gopv＞（L 147）＇to turn over，turn to the side＇，
（iv）〈taqi－dzyaaux＞iL 65）＇tc lie on one＇s back＇， which has nc form＜dzyacux＞aitestec．

The interesting point is that for＜taqU－gaangx＞，at least， there is a by－form attested，〈tanuxfaargx＞（L 68），in which ＜taaux＞is itseif a free verb morpheme（L 68）meaning ito turn around to the opposite side；tc turn abcut face；to turn against；tc be cross－eyed＂．

Now 〈taqij－＞could be a reduced tron ct 〈taaux〉，so that it is basically a question of the serashgetunl cf each idiciect－speaker：if he consicers $\langle$（laq0－＞qo be a reduced ＜tanux tnen all the above forms are verb chipcunds；if he does not，then they are not．In any case it coes not seem that we can account for＜taq［－lergv＞（L tb）＇tc be reckless and daring＂in this way．Now there are quite a number of disyllabic nguns，and a rather lesser rumber of yerbs，con－ taining a reduced first syllable，and in some cases the re－ duced syllable can be identified with either a free form，or at least a less－reduced bound morfheme，and in some cases it cannot．

4．5．5 Yerb＿compoundse Much mork remains to be cicne here．For instances taking Chao（19t8j as our criterion， because of the typological similarity betmeen mien and Chinese，we need to investigâe how easy and tseful it would be to set up for mien the full range of compcund types he sets ip for Chinese，viz．subject－precicate compounds of verisar meaning，co－crdinate estipounds，subordinate com－ pounds，verb－abject compounds，sebardirative compouncs，and complex compounds．Let us here give a sketchy account of what we know in this area，further noting that any combina－ tion of $V+V$＂is a case of vert serializaticn and we have nct yet tinalized a methodology for deciding whether such a sequence is a single word，ioto：is cominated by a w＂－node
or not．Uur remarks then are tentative．

4．5．bl Cozordinate＿sempoundse Here the problem is to decide whether the sequence of verbs really is a single macc or is a case of conjunction redusticn with the structure and meaning of＇to $V$ and to $V$＇or＇Adj and Aci＇．Let us venture some apparent examples：
（i） ＜taauxfgaangx＞（1 68）vo turn around＇（see
stovel．
（ii）＜pientnaaic＞（L 13）＇te questicn thoroughly and firmiy＇（＜pien）（L 13）＇to interrcgate；investi－ gate；enquire about＇，〈rāic〉（L 25\＆）＇to ask or enquire＇f，
（iii）＜taicttswang＞il i7is＇to die’（＜taic＞（L 69）＇to đie＇，〈tswangc＞（L 171）＇tc die＇（slang）），
（iv）＜poeqcfbouc＞（L 49）＇cream ccicred；soft white＇ （＜paeq＞（L 19）＇bewhitef，〈bouc＞（L．49）＇tc be off－white in color＇s．
（v）＜opvitshweix＞（L 8）＇tc become agec，brittle or mildewed＂（＜Opv＞（L 8）＂to be mildewed or rotten； to be brittle＇，〈tshweix＞ $\mathbb{L}$ IE4）＇to be fragile， breakable，easily spoiled＇l．

These are synonymous or nearly syncnymcus compouncss of which outrignt identity of the components, in the torm of reduplication might be considered the limiting case: eg.g <phingfphing> ito rcits (L 37) (<fhing> (L 37) ito roll'?, as in <tsoux phingfphing> (L 37) 'to make roll' (Query: compaud worc? Or symactically compound predicate made up of separate words by conjunction reductionढj.

Reduplicated wor cs may also enter into ccordinate compounds: e.g., <bany-banvfbuav> (L 5I) 'to be completely blurred' (<banv> (L 5I) 'to be incistinct, blurred", <bauv> (L 53) 'to be dims blurred (of vision)'), but since the compound <banvfbuav> also exists: we may perhaps regard it as underfying, and <banvfbanvfbua> as derived trom it by partial reduplicationg yielding a structure <banv*banvfbuav>.

In connection with co-ordinate conpcunds there scmetimes appears a syllabie <kuqv>, as in (1) <topv kuq paeqc> (L 52) 'to be very white' (<bopu> (L 52) be white, bright, light', <paeqc> (L 19) 'be white'), and (2) <banv kuv buav nyei> (L 51) 'io be completely indistinct and blurred'. This syllable requires further investigation.
9.5.52 Subordinative_compounsze These V + V compounds show tone sandhi (a fairly gocc sign that they are single words and not syntactic combinaticns): e.g.e

〈siqu-kox> 'dark red’ (<kcx> 'te-clc; be-dark of nuc's,
(iii) <tsweix-maeng> 'acrid' las of green wood burning ("sme?ly-green").

In all the $V+V$ subordinative compcunds the head verib is on the left and the modifier is on the right. The only exception we have found is the tound intensitier <tom[-> (L 71), which is identical with an augnentative bound torm found with nounsi5! (see Section 三.3.5.é(a)).

The point is that since it is bounc, and cccurs corpounded with both nouns and adjectives its part-ct-speech membership is hard to establish. It coulc be a verb meaning -be big; manifest greatly*, or perhaps it is tetter regarded as a prefix: e.g., <tomo-muanc> be exceedingly fine', (tomu-taix) ito be exceedingly small'. in these torms the semantics, i.e.s smallness, show that <tcru-> has lost any idea of bigness and simply beccre an intensifier. morphologically it can also come into constitsency with verb forms that are already compounds: e.g.. <tonc=paeccfboue> (L 19)
[5] My informants use it with ncuns but do nct accept its use with verbss so there might be scae local variation here.
"to be extremely light skinnec" (for explanation of <peeact bouc) see above, this secticn.
4.5.33 Psycho=ccllocitigns:_天e_they_comecyngs_or Iyntactic_constructions?[6] These are nidespread (universal?) moroheme-combinationse consisting cf the "psychonoun", the word for an internal organ conceptualizec as the seat ot enctions and thoughts, and a msychomate". usually an action verb or adjective, completing the meaning ot mental event, mental state, or personality characteristic. Mien shows here the same complication that it does with numerais -- namely the use of both native anc borrowed fex. Chinesel words: thus the native psychc-noun is <hnyiouv>

161 The term is taken, like sc many ideas in the present work. in this case frcin riasisctf (1985), to which we have not had access but which ty the author's admissicn inspired Jaisser's i1585) work on Henong. to which we have had access only to the hardcut. There we find the following explanation (which may or nay not be a quote from Matisoff (1985):

> wPSYCHO-COLLDCATIDN: polymorfhemic expressicm referring as a mhole to amentel process; quality, or state, one of whose constituents is a "psycho-noun", i.e. a ncun with explicit psycholcgica? reference itranslatatle by English words like HEART, MINO, SPIRII. TEMPER, SUUL, DISPCSITION, MODD). Ife rest cf the psycho-collocaticn contains morphenes (usuaily action verbs or adjectivesl that complete the neaning. ... Thus:
> Psycho-noun + Psychomate - Psychocollccation (Matisoff:1985)
> In Hmeng: Psycho-noun SIAB iliver t psychomate, Psycho-mate + psycho-ncun SIAB iliyer**

```
(L 263), meaning psychologically 'heart; aind; center of the
personality' and physiologicaliy 'the alimentary canal',[7]
while trom Chinese they have a single etymon ({AD #8Cl))
represented with two vccalisms, <tin> anc <fiem>.[8] As with
lmai, putting the noun first csually denotes a permaneme
characteristic, e.goo <finiffaix> (L 195) 'tc be (by nature)
timids cautious, careful, restrained" (<faix> (L 198) 'be
small'), while putting the v first usually denotes a tem-
porary sta`e, e.g.g <faix-fim> (L l&5) itc be careful or
cautious (on a particular occasicn)'. (Ct. Thai cay cii 'to
be kind (by naturel' versus dii six 'to be glad';.
```


[7] The fuil translation of the hord, as given in Lombard (263) before the list of collocation, is 'heart; minc; center of the perscnality; (physiologically conceived) the canal runing from the mouth through the throat and and intestines tc the anus*. Note that as a piysiological conception this represents the alimentary canal and does not correspond to Thai say 'heart", Chinese (AD \#80i) 'heart', or hmong siab 'liver'.
[8] Mien shares with Hmong its propensity tc use this Chinese etymon in psycho-collocations:
"xeeb" is the Hmong pronunciaticn of the Chinese word for 'heart", regarded as the seat of the affections and in this sense equivalent of the Hmong 'siab". It is found in many words involving the affections or mental activity and taken wholly cr in parí from the Chinese:
(Heimbach 1979:406, cited in Jaisser 1985:12).
structure would have the constituent structure "Topic Comment", meaning roughly "with regard to the heart, a state of smallness exists", while the "V + N" construction would have the constituent structure wy t locative $N *$ ("a state of smallness exists in the mind"). khatever their syetacticcmorptological status, bcth kins cf psychc-collocation can function as a comment, and for such a comment the topic has to be at least $I+$ sentientl and $i t a g e n t l$ if nct $\{+$ humenl.

Given the fact that they mostly refer tc a temporary mental event or state, between the topic and comment with $w$ + N" psycho-collocation the verb "feels", "experiences" or "manitests" has to be mentally suppliec, se that, for instance, a structure "NP/taix tim" means MNP experienced/manifested being-small in the heart". sut the semantic question arises why the verb stppliec in this case is a temporary one, viz. wfeedfmenifest en a particular occasion", rather than mbe (permanently) characterized by*。 Perhaps the secret is in the presence ct the locatiye: for if we compare the faraway language cit russian, we find that there too the essentially locative yerbal frefizes have a constraining effect on the generality of the aspect of the vert.

Let us note too, that, regarded as a compound, the $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{N}}$ + V\% structure corresponds to Cheo (19t8:665)"s category of
wajjective" and the wV $+N$ structure tc Chao (cp. cit.)'s "status vert". I shall argue below that the psycho-ncun refers to an inalienable part of the self, ano that as such it cught to be sutjeci in terms of grammatical relations, and that to reduce it tc the status of shbigye gbject, as in done in the $V+N^{W}$ structure, is to froduce a marked sentence type, a "displacement" in Nichols 11975:'s terms.

In order to decide wherher these psycho-collocaticns are verbal compounds org as Marchare (1866) calls them, "syntactic groups", we might have reccurse, musetis my= tandis, to the two criteria Warutamasintop (1975:453) proposed to settle the question in Thai for $\quad+\quad y \times$ collocations that are nominal:
(1) Selestional restrictions: If the psycho-noun cannot co-occur with verbs in a liberal way, e.g.g if it can occur with snly a limited number of verts, then it is likely that collocation is a compound: further investigation is required here, but it is our impression thet "psycho-ncuns" in Mien nave only a defined set of possible ©pscho-mates".
(2) Semanticunpredictability: It the psychocollocation is not understuod as the sum of the censti= Iyents, it must be a compound: for instance, in <hnyicis gaai) (L 263) 'to be satisfiecy cortent', but meaning Iiterally the heart is dry", we nould appear to have an
unpredictable meaningg［9］and we are fairly confident that further investigation would revea！more such．

By inese criteria， 1 venture tc say that Mien psycho－ collocations are compounds nct syrtactic constructions，but I wonder whether harutamasintop＇s criteria are nct caiculat－ ed to icentify idions rather than compcunds，and icioms，as we know，are not specified as to grammatical form：they may be sentences，phrases or compound worcs．Sc tor myselt at this point the gramaticai status of psycto－ccllocations is uncertain－－as indeed it may be in ontclcgical reality．

For a list of mien psycho－cc？lccaticns containing the psycho－noun＜hnyiouv＞see Lombarg（こもこう；for a tew with ＜tim＞see Lombard（195）；for one with 〈tiem＞see Lombard （194）．

## 4．5．53i Psychc＝collocaticrse＿ghcirfe＝extracticns＿ang cross＝languace＿tyoology＿of＿sentence＝constructions it is an areal teature of Southeast Asizo China anc Japan that they avoic using the verb＇tc have＇with inslienable possessicns of which scmething is being predicateg：i．e．g they say ＂（with regard to）ellephants，the nose is long＂，in the＂ocu－ ble sutject construction＂，in preference to elephants have

［9］0f course this example nay cnce tave been fmay still be（？l）well－motivated in terms cf an indigenous numeral theory of mental state anc dispcsitions．
long noses". lt is a further areal teature lhow wicespread I don't kncw) to extract the seas of the emstions out ot the sentient being's "self" and treat it as a separate argurent to a predicate of mental character, making it the winner subject" in a double subject constructicn: i.e., to produce sentences at the type "Jchn, the fieart is small"; i.e.g sentences with a comment made up of psycho-ncun $t$ psychomate, where European languages would use a precicative adjective-ot-character such as 'timid'. Non given the propensity of Mien and its neighbors to "discretize" the seat of the emotions with the totality of the self and aake it a separate argument -- gramatically the stbject cf the psychological predicate $[10]$ - we might take the vien that the treatment
[101 This casts doubt on universal thecries of logical structure that regard the number ct "arguments" with "predicates" of various types as nonprobiematical. It is typical cf such theories to regard predicates of mental qualities suct as be iimid or mental events sich as set a surprise as one-place predicates (semantically involving a Faiient" or as "experiences as their singie argimenty. I wouid argue that innguages of the Southeast Asian type enable us to see that a humar "argument", or self, is nct simple it can de divided intc ii) a "heart" anc the remainder, as tho separate arguments, (ii) the physical gerson and the remainder as two separate argumerits, lisi) the space ccsugied ty the Rhysical perscn and the rearainder as two separate arguments, and sc on. Furthermore, the distinction between "arguments" and "predicates" is noi clear: thus, for instances, in a sentence such as I am Ialking about dim, it would probably be said that abgit is a "predicate", whereas it is clear in (some) Southeast Asian languages that is is an argument extracted from the complex of an ontological "entity" or "identity", and meaning "sutject" or '(subject) matter": e.g.s Thai "speak about $x 0$ is "speak subject $x^{*}$, and it is c?ear that subject is an sygument la lc-
of the "heart" as a lecstiye in psychc-ccllocations of the form "V + N" is a failure of sutject sflecticn, an instance of a shift from the normal sentence pattern, to a marked sentence tyfe or as Nichols (12.75) terms sect shifis, a "displacenent". lypologically this brings mien and its neighocrs into the language-type tha undersces "sisplace= \#ent" with Rsycholegical predicates, in this case. by tendency) psycholcgical predicates dencting a temporary state.

According to Nichols (1975:350-351) "specific displacement patterns, or a general absence of cisplacements, iwhere not internally conditioned, are remarkably sonseryatiye, and] could be diagnostic for genetic reconstruction ... He may have discovered an area of syntax sttticiently stable to support genetic hypotheses". (Emphasis curs).

Nichols' view may seem convincing in Indo-European, Finno-Ugric and the Caucasus, where there is lots of worpholosy to wack up the syntax, but in the linguistic hatitat of Mien, where syntactic patterns seem eninently borrowable,
cative onej, because one can add the locative-verb arcive -- uspeak arrive subject $x \times-$ mithcut changing the meaning. In sum: Southeast fsian linguages cast doubt on the universality of "precicate-argument" logic in two ways: (1) they split "argunents" and thereby acd extra "places" to "predicates", (2) they treat as "arguments" what the logician woulc regera as "predicates". It is time, I would claim, that the "logic ot language" was re-evaluated in the light of Southeast Asian languages.
including change of basic word order, Nichols' proposal doesn't look yery convincing. sut perhaps it is worth locking for further evidence of "displacemert" anc seeing if we can work cut a seneral typology refired eneugh to yield a "dispiacement profile" for each ianguage in the area.
4.5.6 Redupiication_in_xerbal_structuress Since we are taking the conventional view ithat redupiicaticn is a morphological process, not a syntactic cne, we must first pcint out sume cases that we interpret as fseudo-reduplication, because they are syntactic, ioe.g domineted by va, but not by "V". The syntactic constructicn "y + a honophonous nominal form": the latter may te either (a) a vert fcllowed by a homophonous $\ddot{\mathrm{v}-\mathrm{Clf}}$ as a cognate object, e.g.g $\langle\alpha i q u$ điqv vto kick a kick" (with the numeral <yietc> uncerstood betore the Clf, or (b) a verb follcwed by an autoncricus noun object, as in <tshongx tsongx> "to cress-stitch cioth-which-is-Deing=cross-stitched", i.e.s 'tc do crcss-stitching': cf. Englisin 'ico eat eats', or better still, 'tc drink drink'. It is, however; arguable that <tsongxftsongx> is a single lexical item, and thus by some kinds of reascning, a conpound.

[^25]identical predicates：as if cne said ir tnglish he Ean，can instead of be can and can：e．g．，＜tsoux phingtphing）（ll 37） ＇to make roll＇（rather wo make rcil anc roilm，i．e．，a syn－ tactic conjunction of v＇s）：＜uam phaev fhaev＞（L 349）＇the water is bubbling＊，〈dzioux dzuqc sactr saetv teix＞（L 212） ＇to give the knife a few strokes on the whetstone＇（＂whet knite rub rub（onel someness＂）．

Sometimes the first instance of the recuplicand has a high dragged－out intonation：e．g．s 〈mi－i－ingv mingh＞von and on they went＇，（＂ltheyl so－o－c co＂），〈czua－a－anv czuanx＞ ＇back，back they went＇（＂ithey］gc－ba－a－ack gc－back＂）．

While it is arguable that these refetiticns ct action－ verbs simply represent the surface structure wiv vive or perinaps even＂VP VPJ＂，i．e．${ }_{V P}$ a syntactic conjunction of ＂V＋$V$＂or＂VP＋Vpw under wivw with the semantics of re－ peated events，we do also find repetiticn without tone san－ dhi with adjectives：＜mD－gawngv leix leix jaang uav＞il 280！ ＂the head is completely bald＂（＂head be－bald be－baid be－bare Prtal．Perhaps the semantics is of numerous places where the state referred to obtainss rather than numercus in－ stances of the action reference，to happening．The last pattern brings us to our next pattern of reduplication．

4．5．611 Redurlicationof＿t上e＿yerb＿ithent＿Ione＝ sanchie＿follcwectby the＿particle＿sugy2e See the last exam－
ple in the preceding section. Presumably the morpheme <uav> which in other cases means 'that' or 'there" in some way makes the expression more vivid. Cther exanples comprise both action verbs and adjectives: <jhuy jeic jeic uav> (L 103) 'the tog is baring his teeth', <hwei hwei uav> (L 300) 'they're sprouting up al over', Clui-houx teç teqv uav* (L 196) ©the clething is all icrn enc tattereo, <byaauz pomh porih uav> (L 25) 'the sucs tcam all cver the piace'.
4.5.612 Eeduplicaticn_cf_tte_yerb_withoui_Icne= sanchin_the_elements_separateg_dy_the_irtensifierlextensi= fier_merrheme_Staax \& soth acticn verbs and acjectives may be invoived, e-s.*
(i) <phyatv taax phyatv> (L 43) vtc be completely cut ct line',
(ī: $\quad$ (lope taex lope nyei tāih> (L 57) to came galloping in $^{\circ}$ in which <lepc taax lope nyei> is tunctioning adverbially (for reduflication in adverbial phrases, see below).
4.5.613 Sqme_generalizations_on_cesunlisetion_so far:
(1) It has not involved tone-sanchi.
(2) It has involved both action-verbs and aojectives ifor this distinction see belows.
(3) It has conveyed an idea ct enphasis cr vivicness, with an action occurring repeatecly or a state appearing in many places or everywhere.
4.5.614 Reduplication_on_sgyerbial_phrasess Here we sometimes tind tone sandhi, scmetimes nct, so the subject is Ereated in the section below on reduplication with toresandni.
4.5.62 Eedurlication_with_teremanchie This can cnly occur with adjectives or status verbs (see below for sutcategorization of verbst: e.gos
(i) <tsaux on taaih fyawtv-pyawtv> (L 35) vthe toot has swollen up' ("foot swell PERF be-distended=be distended"),
(ii) <tho-hlo> 'very big' ("big-big"),
(iii) <syang-syang> "brand new" ("new-new").
4.5.621 Reduplisation_inagyertial_pheases.1111 Reduplicative adverbial phrases may either frecede or follow the main verb: in the post-vert position we have
(i) <tsaux om taain RYaty-pyawiy> (L 35) the tcot swell PERF sistendediy-sistencediy* and
[11] For explanation of the categcry acverbial phrase see below.
(ii) <dzioux dzuqc sasty safiy teiz> (L zi2) to whet the knife with a few riss'.

When the reduplicative adverbial phrase prececes the verb it may or may not show tone sandin, but it may be followed by the subordinating particie <nyej> ard in this case no tone sandme occurs: e.g.e
(i) <nitti haiz dauh-mauh tsawpy tsawcy nyei ming> (L 169) 'they heard the tiger padding noiselessly along ("... noiselessiy-fad noiselessiy-pad (nyei> go"),
(ii) <byungc phyazi nyei jiac> (L 43) the rain is coming down lightly" ("rain sprinkie sprinkle <nyei> descerd").
(iii) <loRs tagx loRf nyei taaih> (L 67) vto come starming in'.

Examples without <nyei>:
(i) <nongx nongx tshawng> (L 183) 'to consider the meaning carefully" ("Re-gocg=\{e-cogd considermeaning") : Suery: Shoulon't the AcvP have tone sandhi?)
(ii) <mancmanc tsoux> (L 24三) do it gently; take ycur time doing it' (<manc) (L 24
unhurried＇．


#### Abstract

4．5．622 Keduplicatign＿of＿cergeqndss This takes form either as（i）$A-A=B-B$ ，as in（i）＜laengt？angłkaengut Kaengv＞（L 287）Be naked＂（＜laenctkaencvy（l 287）＇to be naked，unclothed＂），（ii）＜koxłkoxfhnyatvfhnyatv＞iL 263）＂to be cld and bent＂（＂be－old＝be－cid三be－stcopec＝be－stooped＂）， ＜koxfhnyatv＞＇to be ald and bent＇，or（2）＂A－A＝B＂icr is it ＊A＝A－B＂）：as in＜banv－banvłbuav＞（il bl）＇to be completely blurreć．


## 4．5．Sesgndary＿features＿of＿yertsE＿Subcategcrizations

（1）fombinatility＿wisi＿Siaisz＿as＿ictensifiers we can by this distinguish a subcategory of verbs，viz．adjectives （v）$:$ e．g．，〈dzweic taic〉 look very scod＇．As a man verb acj ＜taic＞（l 192 ）means＇to die＇，anc we can icentity the use of the verb＇to die＂as an intensifier efter adjectives as an areal feature：cf．Thai suay sa layy（id．＂）．With verbs refierring to action，which we mill call actici verbs：anc further distinguish below the use cf afcllowing＜tais＞ creates a resultative complement meaning iand die；to death＇：e．g．，＜dawtv taic＞＇fall to one＇s death＂．
（2）Gombinability＿with＿stsienz2＿as＿syperlatiyizec： e．g．g＜dzweic tsienz＞＇to look extremely gocd＇．This ncr－ phere cannot be used with action－yerbso
(3) Combingbility_with_<iingcz_as_superletivizers with $y$ possible: e.g.: <dzweic tingc> 'test locking'; with adj $\checkmark$ forms a resultative complement neaning "to the end". action
(4) Combinability_with_Sjifiv2_es_a_Rregressiye_ascect ma゙ger:
(i) with $v$ not possible unless supported by <mingh>, which as a main verb means 'to go' with the meaning of steady intensification: e.g.e, <dweic jhienv mingh nyei> 'tc keep getiing more and more good-iooking';
(ii) with : regular wi jhienv nyeiv 'to be $v$ oing".
(iii) Combinability with 〈tuqv> 'get to, got to, did", an indicator of past tine: with $V$, not possible (except in a few cases with special meanings); with $V_{\text {act }}$, regular: "tucv $V$ act" 'get/gct too V ${ }^{\text {act }}$ $v$ 'ed'. act
(iv) Use in imperaiive: with $v$ ad possible (except in a few cases with special reanings); with y act freely possible.
(y) Use in reciprocai constructiors: with $V$ adj nct possible lexcept in a few cases with special mean-

```
ings); with V , possitle where the v takes an act act NP complement (DC, 10 or oblicue).
```

(vi) Use in reduplicative corstructions: (a)with is an intensified meaning: with $v$, possible iwith scme restrictions (?)l, with $V$ act not possible (with some exceptions, with sfecial meanings): (b) without IS, followed by farticle <uav>; meaning 'to be $V$ 'ing all over the place: $V$ (?), act adj $v$, possible, but pertaps cniy with intransiact tives.
(vii) Combinability with <mangc> (as main $V$ meaning 'to look') in construction reanins 'tc $v$ Dy way of investigation': with $V$, not fcssible; with $V$, possible where inherent meanirg of $y$ allows it.
(viii) Use as first member of resultative VP-bincme: mith $V$, not possib?e; witt $V$, treely possitle. adj act
4.6.1 Auxiliaries_fy _- The criteria abcve serve to andx
distinguish active verbs from acjectives. More research is needed to establish the syntactic distinguishing marks of auxiliaries (V) - it is roughly that they take vp comaux plements in surface structure -- and we shall simply iist some auxiliaries identified semantically:
（1）＜oix＞＇want to＇s negative＜mv cix＞．It is tollomed by a VP．
（2）〈tsuqc＞，〈abftsuqc＞or 〈cixftsuqc＞＇must，have＇ tive＜mv tsuqv＞＇no need to＇．
（3）＜tsuqc＞＋（NP）N NP $1:$ Ihis is a kind et pas－ sive．NP must be corefereritial with the subject／topic 2 of 〈tsuqc＞or an inalienable part cf it．
（4）＜tuqv＞preceding $v$ negative＜mv tuav $v \gg$ ididn＇t get to＇（alsc mon＇t go！w）（see（7）belon）．
（5）＜tuqv＞following a $V: \quad v$ is possibles can $V$ ．．
（b）＜khuv＞＋VP：＇be pleasant tc vp＇．
（7）〈aq＞＋VP：＇be unpleasant tc VP＇＝
（8）＜mv tuqc＞＋VP：（prohibitive）＇Don＇t VP！＇
（9）＜nv tsuqc＞＋VP：（prohibitive）Dor＇t VP！＇
（9）＜mv tuqc＞＋VP：（prohibitive）＇Don＇t VF！＇
（10）＜mv tungu＞，or 〈mv tungx＞＋VP：（prohibitive）von＇t YP：
（11）＜mv chaq＞＋NP：（polite prohiditive）＇Donft bcther tc＇．
（12）＜nv kamh＞＋vP：＇scarcely，haroly，nct very VP＇．
(13) <mv naangc> + VP: "scarcely, hardly, not very vf".
(14) <mv lamh + VP: 'lack place cr occasion to Vp'.
(13) <mv kaeng> + VP: not yet VP; haverft vp'ed yet'.
(16) 〈kunv> + VP: (permissive-imperativel Go ahead and VP: 1t's okay to VP'.

Further investigation is needed tc estainish a syntactic definiticn of, and other aspects of auxiliaries in mien.
4.7. Basicmord_order_inthe_clausez Mien is a SVi language, but like its neighbors it may put the grammatical
 under certain pragmatic conditions beccre yox <banqc> with the semantic relations of agent and patient resioining the same. In a contrastive senterce one ray cmit the agent:
 personl doesn't hit*l. These facts are common to Thai, Mandarin and presumably all basically svo* languages in the area. As for object-placement in serisl yerb construsifens this is a complex question that will not be discussed here. Indirect object placement will be discussed in the next section.
4.7.2 Constructicns_of_giyince Here the DC precedes the IC, an order which is an areal feature: <yia nun sou
meiny＇］give the book［tol you＇．lt is alsc an areal teature that the＂verb of giving f NP＂construction can aiso be used with a VP complement to tre NP，making up a serial verb construction of the pivotal kind with the verb of giv－ ing taking on permissccaustive meaning．

4．8．Verb＝＿for＿yP＝2＿serialization．Inis has seen，or will be，dealt with under various headings，e．ge．clauses as topics，clauses with resiltative complements，strings 0 § verbs（or $\mathrm{VP}^{\prime} \mathrm{s}$ ， ，sarataxis，clausal or verbal comfiements， purpose slauses，clauses of reascn，the pivctal construc－ tion，the pseddo－pivotal construction，auxiliaries＋VP com－ plements，and the reader is directed to refer to the relevant sections．There is one other kinc of serial－verb construction that has not yet been cealt mith and that has been called the foriarhial sonstryctign．

4．8．1 Secciug ierbs＿as＿directional＿ccmplenentse yp＇s can be followed by directional complements in the form of verbs；the glosses are the meanings they have as main veros：〈taux＞＇to ascend＇，〈jiac＞＇to descend＇，〈pisqc＞＇to enter＇ and 〈₹shaatv＞＇to emerge＇，〈dzwenx＞＇to return＇，〈jhiax＞＇to cross over＇，and 〈goi＞＇be open，be apart，be away＇to pro－ duce meanings like the German pretixes ter－，hin－s berauf－， nerab－，etc．in a manner almost icentical tc mandarin as if－ lustrated in Chao 1968：458．


$$
\left\langle y i a\left\{\begin{array}{l}
(a) \text { thengx } \\
(b) \text { kan } \\
(c) \text { rshaux }
\end{array}\right\}\right. \text { aein ttcv teix dia> }
$$

'I ask you for a iittle medicine" ("I assciate-with-you lin order tol ask-for some medicine; 1 ask tor some medicine from your -- sentences (a) and (b)!, anc ${ }^{9}$ Ycu and I ask for
some medicine" ("l bewith you ask for recicine" -- sentence (c)). It needs further checking to establish whether sentences (a) and (D) can also sear the deaning of sentence (c), the latter being unambiguous. Co-verbiel expressions seen to be the preferred means of deailirg with human qbligue objects. My impression is that the coverbs are nct as "deverbalized" ds in Mandarin: for instance, they may take aspect markers freely. As for (humans incirect objects; these follow the main verb in the next construction to be discussed.
 meaning vp for NP', e.g.: 〈yia tcqc sou pun nein> 'l read a sook for you'. The constituent tellowirg the <pun> may also be clausal <yia toqc sou pun meih mwargx> il read the book for you to listen to , or we can regard the NF after <pun> as pivotal here. The link with <pun> in this construction seens to keep it an indirect object, i.e., nct an cbique object, and it is the co-veribial treatrent of oblique human objects that provides evidence (a) that $[+$ humanl is a syntactic category in Mien, and (tit that colique objects are distinguishable grammaticaily from incirect otjects.
4.9.

Qther_constituents_of_ite_clausejadyerbial expressions_of_ixme__manner_and_elaces

4．9．1 lime．Expressions of foint ct time may stand as topic at the tront of the sentence，e．g．，《agy teangh yia jaaux mein＞In a minute l＇ll teach ycu＇，and＜lez－ingi maaih tauh auv－kway－mienh＞＇Long agc there was a widow＂． Some，however，must occur between the shtject and the verb， e．Э．．，＜ninh tsherfhef thaux＞the just nch arrivedr，and＜yia tsnabc faix nye＞（L 183）＇I was still small＂，or＜ninh ag－ los faux kuh－ngwaaic mingh＞＂She always went up to the sky＇． It is interesting that the placement of such time expres－ sions is the same in English，more or less，i．e．，there seem to be two sets．Perhaps there is some analcgy here to the inner and cuter locative expressions ct chinese，with the sentence－initial set corresponding to the outer locative． Mien has no word for ifrom＂，and insiead usually uses the locative vert 〈yiem＞＇to be at；to be there；to dwell＇， e．3．：〈yiem naiv jhiax mingh＞（L 116）＇fram ncw on＇．Extent of time is expressed by a Num＋Cif expression placed after the veríg e．g．g＜ninh aengx tscix kcx yiets buyazngx＞ （L 169）＇He has grown older by yet another year＇s or 〈yia yien naiv amelikaa tuqv Ryaa boyanggy＞ 11 have been in Amer－ ica tor five years＇or＜yia tsclx korg yiefl jhugy nawm tsyangh－hoc lamz hiets naw tsyangh－bos 11 horked from six to eight＂．

4．9．2 Manner，There awe three mays of expressing manner in Mien：
(a) Une is to add a stative verb after the verb that is being mooified in a resultative constrcticng e.ge, <ninh lawh longx fuqc-jhweis 'She reans the childref well" i"She rear be-gcod children"). The placement of the object is tricky, in that the stative verb precedes it in the positive, as above; and follows it in the negative: <ninh tawn tuqc-jhwei inv longx) ("She rear children not te-good")
(b) The second way is for the manner expression rodifying the verb to precede the vert and be connected $t c$ it by the particle <nyei>, e.g.: <byungc phyaai phyaai nyei jiac> The rain is coming down lightly" ("Rein sprinkle sprinkle nye descendx) (L 43).
(c) The way a high degree of sometrirg is expressed is tc place the word <haic> very at the end of the VP: <aqcy tuqu kan mienh leiz haic> ilt is very cifficult tc follow the customs of the Mien' i=ditficult follow Mipn customs very").
4.9.3 Elaçe Location is exfressec in several ways in Mien:
(a) by an oblique object usec with a verb, e.g., <paix dyangx ( 1 L 21 ) 'to lean (something) asainst a tree' ("lean tree"), 〈yia dzuanx uav pyauv> "I'm goirg home" ("l return over-there house").
（b）By the use of the locative vert 〈yien＞，e．g．：iyia yier pyauv＞＇I am at home＇，〈aah－tnci yia yien livtchamaawn＞ Yesterday i was in Richmond＂．
（c）By the use of a 〈yiem＞ptrase tcgether with bnother VP，i．e．g by VP serialization，e．go：＜yia tsoux kong yiem pyauv＞＇I work at home＇（＂I do work be－ct home＂）．Here the UP＇s seem to be reversible without a change of meaning：＜yia yien pyauv tsoux kong＞．

The NP that follows 〈yiem＞ir．（b）anc（c）above may be ssed alones or accompanied ty a specific－losation noung or localizer，semanticaliy corresponcing tc an English preposi－ tiong essc，＜kaih－nyuaz＞vinsice：withini inner＇，as in ＜ninh an nyaanh yiem kapv kaib－nyuaz＞the put money in a box＂（＂He put maney be－at box inside＂）．Sonetimes the lo calizer is tacked on to its noung tormisig a compounc with tone sandhi：＜kaengh－daangc＞in front cf the docr＂， ＜pyauv－hlen＞beside the house＇．When it is not so at－ tached，the order of localizer anc head noun nay be reversec under conditions that require further irvestigation．ll2l

[^26]
## CHAPTER V

## CUNCLUDING REMARKS

The present work is very far from teing a compremensive study of Mien grammar and our indebtecness to the pioneers will be cbvious on every page. we interc that our contribution, which takes the form of a revien of published data, presentation of new data, aria analysis, tirstly in the light of certain aspects of contemporary grammatical theorys anc seccndyy in the light of typclogical comparison from the general lingsistic area of which Mien terms a part, will by oniy the beginning of a more ample gramratical study that we iritend to carry out as a continuing enterprise.

## EIBLIOgEAREY

```
"oct., E. and Harms, R. T., 12IG. Uniyersols in Iinguisife
        tbegry, Holt, Rirehart anc Winstons London.
iacn, E.g 1970. "Nouns and noun fhrasesge in fach and Harms
    1970, PP. 91-124.
Zcllard, N.L.. "!he linguistic histcry cf South Cnina: Miaooyac
    and Scutnerr dialects,* KS.
HErisict, F. K., 1285. vearly Sinc-Tibetan/Miao-Yao loan rela-
        tionships," handout at l9&5 SEASSI Conference, University of
    Michigan: Ann Arbor, August 2, 1985.
ieng, Tan chee, 1975. "The yao pecple: an introduction," The
        Yao village of Khun Haeng: scre impressions,* wa Yao bridge
        ceremony, "The Yao narinc system, "W& legendary history of
        the origini of the Yao people," in Earmers in the Hills, Up-
        lanj Pegeles of North Ihailons, ed. A. K. Halker, Data Pa-
        fers in Sccial Anthrcpology. Schcol of Comparative Sccial
        Science, University Sains Maicysia, Pinang.
Chafe, w.g. 1279. wGivenness, contrastivenesso definitenesss sub-
    jects, topics and posnts of vieng* in Li 19?6= p%=25-56.
Chang, K., 1947. WUn the Miao-Yao Tones,* Bin̈P, voze i=% ppe
    93-110, (in Chinese).
Clidig. K., 1853. Wi the Tone system of the Miao and Yac Lenguages," Lenguage, vcl. 25, fP. 374-378.
Ctinnig Kos 1966. "A Comparative Study of the Yao Tone System, tanguage, vol. 42, PP. 303-31C.
Chang, K., 1972. *The Reconstruction of the Proto-meac-Yao Tones, EIHE vol. 44 . \(\mathrm{FP} .541-628\).
Chang, Ke: 1976. "Protomiac Initials, BIMP, vole 47, no. 2. 5P. 155-218.
```

Cheo, Y. R. K 1232. A prelininary study of English intonations (with American variants) aric its Chinese equivaients, in Is' $i$ Y Yan E'ei Anniversary Yclyme, Supplement I of BIHP, FF. 105-156.

Chac, Yo Re, 1269. A Grammar of SEgken Ghineses University of California Press, Eerkeley anc Las Angeles, California.

Chomsky, N., 1927. Synsactis Stryctures Mouton \& Company, The Hague.

Eficnsky, iv, 1955. "Topics in the theory of generative grammar," in Fucrent Irends in Lingtistics, Yel. Ille kinguistic Iherri, ed. T. A. Sebeck, Moutcin $\&$ Company. The Hague.
 Siar Society, Bangkck.

Clork, M., 1972. "Synchrcnically derived prepositions in oiachronic perspective: some evicence from Hmong, paper eresented at the lith International Conference on SinoTibetan Languages and linguistics.

Clork, M.s 19\&Q. "Source phrases in White Hmong, in Horking Ra* gers in Linguistics, ppe 1-50, University of Hawaii.

Clerk, M., 1985. "Asking questions in Horong and other Southeast Asian Languages," Lincyistics cf the Iibeto-Burgan Areas vol. 5, no. 2, PP. 60-67.

Ccrrie, 3.3 122l. Lanzuage tniversals and Linguistic Izpology: s¥ntax and Horphology, lhe University of Chicago Press, Chicago.

Cushing, Rev. J. No, MoA., E.Do, IEsZ. Grammar of the Shan Lansuage, American Beftist Missicn Press. F. D. Phinneys Supt. $\mathrm{Sangoon}$.

Cushing, Rev. J. Nes M.A., E.D.s igisg Elementary Handbgek of the Shan Language, Arerican Eaptist Mission Press. F. D. Phinney, Supt., Rangoon.

Cushing, Rev. J. N.. M.A., Ph.E, D.D., 1214. A Shan and Englisin Qictionary, American Eaftist Mission Press, F. D. Phinney, Supt., Rangcon.

Cusnman, $\mathfrak{Z}$. D., 1972. Rebel haunts and lotus huts: problems in the ethnohistory of the Yac, $\mathrm{F}_{\text {Cornell }}$ University, Ph. 01970 antincopology) Ann Arbor, Mich.. University Microfilms.

Dǐon, R. M. W., 1979. "Ergetivity," Language, vol. 55, pp. 59138.
 abridges version of unpublished doctoral dissertation, U. of Chicago, 1968;s referrec to in Warutamasintop: 1975.

Fillmore, C. J., 197Q. UThe case for case," in Bach and Harms 1970, pp. 1-90.

Fcley, in. L. and Vaitin, R. D. Van ar.o 197I. Mn the viability cf the notion of 'subject' in universal grammer," ELSs vol. 3. PP. 293-320.
 anc Universal Gramar, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
rcrrest, R. A. D., 1965. Ihe Chinese language ind Egn. revised ans expended.], Faber and faber Ltd., London.

Fuller, J. W., 1985. "Subject and tcpic in Hmong: the case for tofic particlesg" Paper reat at SEASSI Cpnference, Hmong Linguistics Panei, August 2, 1985.

Givon, T., 1276. "Topic, pronoun and grammetical agreement, in Li, ed..

Goral, D. K., 1978. Wumerical classifier systems: a southeast Asian cross-linguistic anelysis," linguistics of the Iigeto-£urman Area, vol. 4, nc. 1, pp. 1-72.

Halliday, fi. A. K., 1270. WLanguage structure and language function," in Niew Horizons in Lingyistics, ed. Lyons, Penguin books, Ltd., 1970, Harmencsworth, Middlesex.

Hollisay, M. A. K. and Hasan, R.s 197t. Cobesion in Engiish, Lonjaians, Londori.

Houoricourt, A. G., 1954. MIntroduction a la phonclogie hise torique des langues Miac-Yao," Sulletin de l'Esole Exancaise £'Extreae Orient, vcl. 44, nc: 2, PP. 555-576.

Heudricourt" A. G., 1261. "Eifartition et tripartition des systemes de tons dans queiques langues d'Extreme-Orient," Eulletin de la Sosiete de Linguissique de Raris, vol. 56, pp. 163-180.

Heath, J., 1275. "Some functional relationships in grammar," banausge, vcle 51. pp. E9-104.

Hc, K. and Chapman, E. C. eds., 1213. Studies of Contemporary Inailand, ANU, Canberra.
litiffiran, F. E., 1270. WThai and Cenbodian - a case of syntactic
 93, no. 4, pp. $488-509$, cited in Ciark 1985 on questions and Sohart node on proof of syntactic berrowing -

Jackencoff, R., 1274. "Morptological anc semantic regularities in the lexicon," Eanguase.

Jaisser, A. C., 1985. "Lelivering an introduction to psychocollocations with SIAB in khite hrong," hardout, first draft et SASSIC, U. of Michigan, Ans arbor, Augusi 2, 1985.

Kencre, P. K., 12\& I. "Autioncmy anc integration of social systems: the lu Mien ('Ya' or "Man'j mountain population and their neightors," in sgutieast Asian Ifibes, Mingities, and Naticns, ed. Kunstadier.

Kerlyren, :A, 1274. Enalytic cicticoary of chinese and Sings玉ignese, nover Publicationss Incos New York, [an unabridced, unaltered reputlication of the work originally publisnea by the Librairie Urientaliste Paul Geuthner, Paris, in 192うj.

Keenan, E. and Comrie, B., 1512. "ncun fhrase accessibility and universal grammar," paper presented at the 47th LSA meeting.

Kecnan, E., 1976. "Towards E universal cefinition of 'subject's" in C. Li, 1976, PP. 301-333.

Kecnan, E. and Ccmrie, S., 1577. Mhcun phrase accessibility and universal grammar," Linguistis lnguiry, val. 8, pp. 63-99.

Kunc, S. and Hongkromthong; Po, 158. Welative clauses in Thai," Studies in Langusgeq ycl. 5, no. 2, pp. 195-226.
kunstadter, P. ed., 1267. Scytheast Asian Iribes, Mingrities, and Netions, Princeton Lniversity Press, Princeton.

Lakcff, R. T., 1968. Abstrast Syntax ans Letin Cemelementaticn, M.i.t. Press, Cambridge, Mass..

Lees, R . E., 19t0. "The grarmar of English nominalizations," Inciana University Research Cerier in Anthropalcgy, Folklore, anj Linguistics, Publicetion 12 (identical with rnternatienal Journal sf American binguistics, XXYI. No. 3, Part II).

Lemoine, J., ivis. "Les Miac-yac," in Les peuples non Han de la Chine, Ethnologie Regicnale II, Encyclopedie de la Pleiade, paris.

Lemoine, Jog 1282. Yas ceremenial Paiutinsz: white Lotus Co.s Ltd., Bangkck.

Lemoine, J., i2ez. wao retigion and society, in Highlanders of Ihailąg: ed. J. McKinncn and h. 8hrukyasini.

Lemoine, J., 1983. Why has death stalked the refugees?," Natural History, vol. 92, no. 11, fP. 6-19.

Li, C. ej., 192f. Sukject and Igaic, Acadenic Press, New York.
ii, C. and Thompson, S., 121t. wsubject and topic: a new topolosy of linsuage, ${ }^{\circ}$ in C. $\mathrm{Li}, 1976$.

Liles, E. R., 1972. Linguistics ang the English Language, Goooyear Publishing, Inc., Pacif ic Palisades, Californía.

Lontiord, S. J., 126玉. "Names," appendix $C$ in sombard 1968: pp. 329-333.

Lumbard, S. J., 1963. mproverts and idicms," appendix $D$ in LomDard 1958. pp. 335-339.

Lcmbard, S. J., 1968. Ygo-Englisb Eicticnary, Data Paper No. 69, Southeast Asía Program, Department cf Asian Siadies, Cornell University, Ithaca, New York; H. C. Purnell, driep editor.

Mac, Zongwu and Zhou, Zuyac, 12tzo "Yaozu yuyan gaikuang ["Sketch of the languaces of the $Y$ ac people"]," in Zhongaug YนผЕี. vol. 114. pp. 141-147.

Mac, Zonswu, Meng, Chaoji, and Zherig, Zongze, 1882. Yaozy Yuyan jianzti ["EIjef Account of the fangyages of the Yas Repple" ${ }^{\text {T, Minzu Chubanshe, Eeijirg. }}$
fiarchand. H., 126s. *The categories and types of present-day English word formation.w

Mart, U., 19g5. Central Vietnam Estuilds: an eyewitnese account: Indochira lssues 59 (July 1985), Center tor Internationa? Policy, iajshington, D. C..

Natisoff, J. A., 1273. Ihe Grammar sf Lais, Uriversity of Calfornia Press, Berkeley.

Matisoff, J. A., 1974. vert concatenation in Kachin," Linguis tics of the Iibeto-Eurasn Ares, vol. 1, no. 1, PP. 186-207.

Matisoff, J. A., tighe VVariationel semantics in Tibeto-Burmans the "organic" approach to lincuistic comparison, incasionai Papers of the wolferden Scciety, VI, Foko iemmany ed., Idupilicated 1974, 1975

Mctiscff, J. A., 1285. MeErts ane ginas: psycho-collocations in Southest is ian languages and English," paper to be presented to the 18 th International Conference on Sino-Tibetan Lenjuages and Lirguistics, Eargkok, August 27-29, 1985.
nccawley, $\therefore$ D.: 1270. "The Role of Semantics in a Grammar," in tach and Harms 1070; 12E-370..

Mckinron, J. and Bhrukrasri, W. eds., 19\&?. Highlanders ef Ihailang, Jxford University Press, Kualalampur.

Miles, $0 .$, 1973. "Some demccraphic implications of regional commerce: the case of North Thailandss Yao Minority, in Stusies of contemerary Inailand, ed. R. Hc and E. Co Chapman, ANU, Canberra.

Byinill, J., 1283. "A comparative siudy of topic and focus constructions with special reference to izotzil," $445, ~ v o l .9$, $P P=155-169$.

Newmeyer, F. J., 127E. WThe position of incorporation transformetions in a grammar," ele, vci. $1=$ PP. 333-342.

Nichols, Jo. 1915. averbal semantics anc sentence construction.*
Noonan, M., 1977. "En subjects anc Topics," BLS: vol. 3, 3?2385.

Noss, f. R., 1264. Ihai reference grammar: Foreign Service Institute, Washington.

Panupong, V., 1970. lnter-sentence feiaíions in modern sonyersaIignal Ihai, The Siam Scciety, Bangkok.

Purnell, H., 1270. "Towards a reccnstruction of proto-Miac-Yac."

Purnell, $H . C .$, Jr., 1960. MKinship terminology,* Appendix $B$ in Lombera 1968, pp. 321-322.

Purnell, $H$. C., Jr.e 1900. unumbers, Appendix A in Lombard 136S. PP. 317-320.

Schachter, Pog 1273. "The subject in Philippine languages: tofic, actor, actor-topic, or none of the above, in Li 1976. pp. 491-518.

Searle, j. R.; 1970. Speech acts: an essay in the philosgphy of lisnguase, Cambricge University Press, Cambridge.

Snalley, í. 3 .s 1261. "Outline of Khmu? Structure," American diciental Series, Essay 2.

Scinit, D.s 1984. UIntroduction tc the Eico Min Yao Languageg* Faper presented at tre 17th International Conference on Sinu-Tidetan zanguages and linguistics, Sept. 7-9. 1984, University of Oregon, Eugene.

Thompson, S. A., 1273. *Resultative verb compounds in Mandarin: a case for lexical rules." Lasgyage, vol. 49, pp. 36i-379.

Wälker, $A \cdot R . e d o s$ 1215. Eacmers in tre Hills: iplang Pecples of Nortt Ihailend. Data Fapers in Social Anthropologyo School of Comparative Sociai Science, University Saîns Malaysias Pinang.

Warotamasikkhadit, U., 1272. Ihai syntax: an gutiines Moutons The Hague, referred to in Waretamasintop, 1975.

Warutamasintop, W., 1275. wity compound nouns in Thaig in ELS, vol. 1 : $\mathrm{Pp} \cdot 445-45$.

Wheatcing J. H., 2985. "Subject anc topic in Hmong: the case for tofic particles, paper read at SEASSI Conferefices Hinong linguistics Panel. August 2, 1985.

2 inmer, $k ., 1975$. Some ceneral observations about nominal comEquads, Stanford University horking Papers in Language Liniversals, No. 5, referred tc in Newmeyer, 1975 l...incorporition...).


[^0]:     tionships recently reviewed by Benedict (1985i, and be-
    

[^1]:    [4] Marr 1985:6.

[^2]:    [5] Angle Drackets enclose the orthocraphy used in the present work; see below.

[^3]:    ［I］Aptho：gt the Enspiration of Searle 1970 is evi－ dent here，we have not atterpted a rigorous application to Mien of Seartean illocutionary－act categories．

[^4]:    [5] Cf. Chao 1968:85:86, who cites from French an example (not his ownl of an analogous construction: Jusgy'aux enfants furent massacres "Thev were massacred, even down to the children' ("Down to the children [they] were massacred").

[^5]:    [6] In the present grammar $I$ am not, as : have said, primarily interested in lincuistic theory or syntactic argumentation. Many shenomena do not belong in a clear-cut way to one category or another. Thus as a syntactic test of topic-comment structure we mioht proc pose the methrd of nedation: it could be suggested that the criterion for topic-comment structure is negatabitity by the expression $\langle r v$ tseiz> not to be; not to be the case; etc." Now the normal way to negate a sentence with a resultative complement is to insert the simple negative particle 〈maiv> or <mv> between the action-verb and the result clause: for instance, our cxample sentence <tsweiz jhunh / huv> [L 104) if [you] sit on the skirt, it will sionitit ("Sit skirt/ [results in] be-spoiled"] would be negated as <tsweiz jhunh / mv huv>. "It won't spoil it if you sit on the skirt" ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{sit}$ skirt/ net [result-in] be-spoiled").

[^6]:    [11] Ir, with a loss of the adversativeiconcessive meaning. schema ic) when Proposition2, then Proposition2 lsee below regarding the meaning mifN shading into "iwhen".
    [12] Rather than being a case of semantic ambiguity this might also be recarded as being simply one of strictural ambicuity, with each intereretation, if indeed the interpretations are truly different, having correspondina in it a different deep structure. For expcsitory purpcses it seems to matter littie whether we regard the ambiquity as semantic or structural: excect that the iatter interpretation implies an oblioation on the part of the lanauage-describer to go into tedious attempts to reccnstruct the deep structure, when the ambiouity, of thatever kind it may be, is easily ofrasped, and the lincuist mas much else on the surface to describe.

[^7]:    ［1］For principles governing use of hyphens－－sin－ gie，double，etc．see Section 3．3．1．

[^8]:    121 This structural feature is common to the South East Asian linguistic areag although of ccurse the collectivizing morpheme differs from language to language: in Latio, for instance, it is hi (J.A. Matisoff: personal communication).

[^9]:    The final syliable of each of the above forms is a classifier (see Section 3.4.2) or, in the case of 〈dau>, and

[^10]:    ［3］A slash through a hyphen or hyphen－combination does not change the logical meaning of the symboi，but is a pronunciation－marker，indicating that the syllable to the left of the hyphen is not sutjected to tone－ sanohi（see passim）．

[^11]:    [4] The process of separation is simply the general process of which a speciai case has been referred to by the term "ionization of compounds", a terim whese use in linguistiss is of uncertain origin, tut has fixed by Y.R. Chao (see for instance Chao $1968: 15 \%$ et seq.) and was fcllowed by Matisoff isee, for instance, Matisoff 1973:Secs. 3.39, 4.46). The result of the process is at "elaborate expression", in this case a yerbal one: see Matisoff 1973:index of topics. Elabcrate expressions in Mien stand in need of further investigation.

[^12]:    ［7］The segmentation here is justifiec ty that facts （a）that＜jhianx－jhiequ＞is an established term for a person belonging to a dark－skinnec race，（D）that the adjectives are not reversible here－－one cannot say ＂＜jhianx－kox－jhiequ＞．If one wishes to alter the logi－ cal categorization to＇black aged ferson＇ane can indeed reverse the terms，but must substitute tor the adjective＜kox＞a noun，such as＜ong＞（lit．＂father＇s father＂but used in certain contexts to mean＂old man＇）：thus＜jhianx－ong－jhieqv＞＇tlack aged person＇．

[^13]:    ［8］we would suggest that the exercise of providing （sintactic）underlying forms for compound nouns is in－ herentiy tentative．Cf．English：＂Gne cifficulty with providing underiying forms for compounds such as libeyse cat，bousefly，bouse guest and holsepainierl is that in most cases the native speaker＇s understanding of the relarionship is based not so much on his knomledge of the language as it is on his other kncmledge，such as what a cat，a fly，a guest，or a painter normally does in regard to a house．No áequate suggesticn has yet been made as to how to handle this kind cf knowledge． In tact，many linguists feel that nenlinguistic knowledge such as this has no piace in inguistic analysis．Yet speakers of Engiish can create new com－ pounds almost as readily as they can nen sentences，and other people can understand them．＂（Liles 1972：17）。 Let us note further that in a review of nominal com－

[^14]:    ［9］See footnote about this wort in beicw．
    ［10］Sections 3．3．1，3．3．2．1．1－2，3．3．2．2．1－2， 3．3．3．1．1－2．

[^15]:    [13] Cf. the semantically analogous Lahu ya-g (d.A. Matisoff -- personal commicationls and Malay anak_suskat.

[^16]:    [16] There are some problems here: see Purnell 1970.
    1171 Purnell (1968:317-322) offers no form for ${ }^{\text {imil- }}$ iion', jut presumadiy the Thailand Mien have borrowed the Northern Thai form, which in its vien guise may well be identical with the Lao-derived form.
    [18) Attributions to Chinese are tased on Downer (1973), simplifying $h$ is stratification tc twe: modern and Rre-wogern ioans. for further refinement and dis cussion of problems see Downer op. cit. Presumably the rime ct <jhuav> 'g' comes from contamination with <duah> sid".

[^17]:    219！for explanation of terms＂nultiplicand＂，＂adden－ dume，＂clfrn＂see Section 3．4．1．3．1．1．2 directly below．

[^18]:    [20] Cf. the situation with the Thailand lahu: Matis off 1963: Sec. 3.4.1.

[^19]:    121: The tone of the Mien form, phonetically falling, could represent either an underlying falling tone fassumed in Lombard's spelling of the word (L 65)l or the geutralization of tones $1-6$ in 15 . Etymelogical tones are, cf course, irrecoverable in tound forms cnly found under TS. He are assuming that the etyoological tone has indeed been lost through iS, since the Chinese origin of the word seems so patent. The etyrolocical tone would be <-c> [1], lower C.

[^20]:    [22íćt. speciaīized Engiisn terms, e.g.s Eroy weight, etc. (an analggy broucht to my attention by J.A. Matisoff, poc.:

[^21]:    Note: For cnexplained node-symbols see Sec. 3.11

[^22]:     Lahu and in general. To $h$ is examples me can add the Malay Clf buan.

[^23]:    [30] The question of whether a collocation has the status of single word in a language is separate from the question of whether it belongs in the lexicon: common sense wos? indeed suggest that words wind are derived in a perfectly regular manner fram other woras already entered in the lexicon need nct thenselves se entered into the lexicon. For instance, in English it would seem unnecessary to enter into the lexicon every word that begins with non- or ends with - Haker inasmuch as these are perfectly perspicious semantically and can be coined at will. But we shculd enter, for instance, nonenfity, since that is not really the cpposite of entity, and shoemaker and watchmaker, since in these post-medieval times the referents do not characteristically make shoes or, as the case way be, hatches.

[^24]:    －－＜nv tain＞－－as if the nasal did nct represent the negative particies；my intormants pronounce it as spelled here．

[^25]:    4.5.61 Reduplicatien_without_tspe=sanghis There is no tone sandhi here and it is arguatle that ne are simply dealing with a syntactic entity: a recuced conjunction of two

[^26]:    112］For a study of locative constructions in mien and Mandarin see Solnit（n．d．）．

